

# Short- and medium-term priority actions to conserve the Atlantic humpback dolphin: *Sousa teuszii*



December 2020

Edited by Gianna Minton, Caroline Weir, and Tim Collins



# Contents

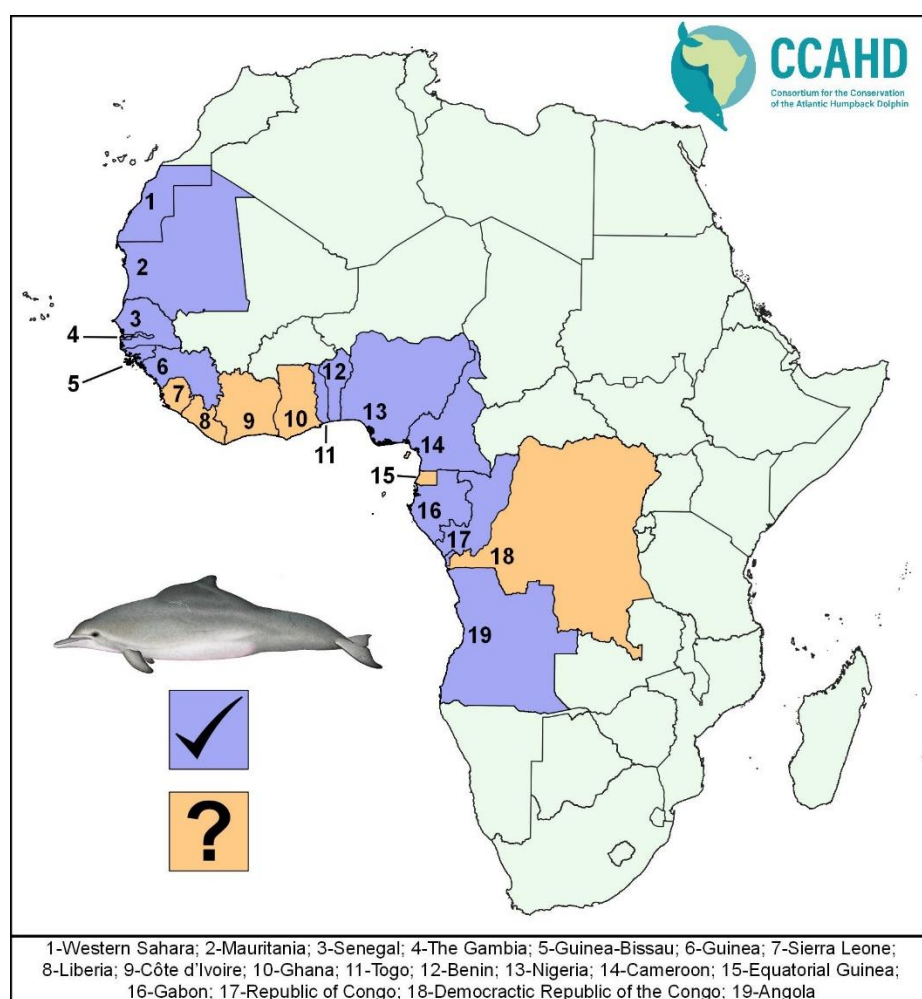
---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Executive summary .....  | 3   |
| 1. Background and context .....  | 5   |
| 1.1 History of the CCAHD .....   | 5   |
| 1.2 Objectives of this report .....  | 5   |
| 1.3 Working Methods .....  | 6   |
| 1.4 Review .....   | 8   |
| 1.5 Structure of this report .....   | 8   |
| 2. Identification of priority knowledge, resource and capacity gaps .....                          | 8   |
| 2.1 Knowledge gaps .....   | 8   |
| 2.2 Resource Gaps .....  | 10  |
| 2.3 Capacity Gaps .....  | 11  |
| 3. Recommended actions .....   | 12  |
| 3.1 Priority short- and medium-term actions .....  | 12  |
| 3.1.1. Actions to address knowledge gaps .....   | 12  |
| 3.1.2 Actions to address resource gaps .....   | 14  |
| 3.1.3. Actions to address capacity gaps .....  | 14  |
| 3.2. Longer term activities .....  | 16  |
| 3.3. Required funding and support .....  | 17  |
| 4. Conclusions .....   | 20  |
| References .....   | 21  |
| Appendices .....   | 23  |
| A1. Potential short- and medium-term targets for the conservation of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> .....    | 23  |
| A2. CCAHD membership list .....  | 27  |
| A3. CCAHD Working Groups and compositions .....  | 29  |
| A4. Working Group 2 Full Report: Outreach and Capacity Building .....                              | 30  |
| A5. Working Group 3 Full report: Field surveys in Senegal Gambia an Beyond .....                   | 46  |
| A6. Working Group 4 Full Report: Conservation Genetics .....                                       | 59  |
| A7. Working Group 5 Full Report: Documenting and Sampling Carcasses .....                          | 69  |
| A8. Working Group 6 Full Report: Interview Surveys .....   | 78  |
| A9. Working Group 7 Full Report: Preparing for Full Health Assessments .....                       | 87  |
| A10. Working Group 8 Full Report: Acoustic Studies .....   | 107 |
| A11. Working Group 9 Full Report: Bycatch Monitoring and Mitigation in the Republic of Congo ..... | 125 |
| A12. Working Group 10 Full Report: Mitigating Impacts of Costal Developments .....                 | 141 |

**Suggested citation:** Consortium for the Conservation of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin (CCAHD) (2020). Short- and medium-term priority actions to conserve the Atlantic humpback dolphin *Sousa teuszii*. Report of the Consortium for the Conservation of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin, edited by Minton, G., Weir, C. and Collins, T. Available from [www.sousateuszii.org](http://www.sousateuszii.org). December 2020. 145 pp.

## Executive summary

The Consortium for the Conservation of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin (CCAHD) was formed in response to growing concerns about the declining conservation status of the Atlantic humpback dolphin (AHD, *Sousa teuszii*) species over recent decades. These concerns have been increasingly recognised and highlighted by several international organisations in the last five years, including the [IUCN](https://www.iucn.org), [CMS](https://www.cms.int) and [IWC](https://www.iwc.org). Designated as Critically Endangered on the IUCN Red List of Threatened species, fewer than 3,000 individuals are thought to remain throughout the species' entire range which spans up to 19 countries between the Western Sahara in the North to Angola in the South.



*Atlantic humpback dolphin range. Countries shaded in purple are those with confirmed records of AHD strandings, bycatch or live sightings, while those shaded orange are countries for which no records exist, likely due to a lack of dedicated cetacean survey effort. Map courtesy of Caroline Weir, Ketos Ecology.*

Between September and November 2020, CCAHD members conducted an in-depth assessment of gaps that are hindering conservation action for the species, and recommended specific actions to address these gaps. The work was organised through 12 working groups, each focusing on specific targets (Appendices 1 and 3). In each case, Working groups held virtual online meetings and exchanged multiple documents to assess and rank gaps and recommended actions in their target areas, a process that resulted in detailed final reports for nine working groups (Appendices 4-12). Two additional working groups focusing on the CMS Concerted Action and fund raising each met once and produced minuted action plans. The working group focusing on the formation of a CCAHD Expert Panel will begin work in 2021 when CCAHD membership includes wider representation from AHD range states.

Once working Group reports and minutes were completed, their identified gaps and recommended actions were collated into a matrix to identify overlap and synergy between them. Gaps and recommended actions were grouped under three broad categories:

1. Knowledge gaps and actions to fill them;
2. Resource gaps, and actions to address them;
3. Capacity gaps and actions to build capacity.

The identified gaps are presented in [Section 2](#) of this report. Recommended actions to address these gaps are presented in [Section 3](#), with the bulk of recommended actions considered short- or medium- term priorities, and a smaller number considered longer term priorities. Very rough and partial budget estimates, as well as indications of secured funding are provided in [Section 3.3](#), while more detailed budget estimates are provided in the full working group reports in appendices 4-12. **Recommended actions** include (but are not limited to):

- Field surveys, initially focusing on the Senegal-Gambia region, but extending into other range states as soon as resources and capacity allow. These will include multiple methods including photo-identification and acoustics, to better understand distribution, abundance, habitat use and some aspects of the species' behaviour and biology. In addition to addressing knowledge gaps, these surveys will build capacity through the involvement of local scientists and conservation organisations.
- Design and implementation of local ecological knowledge (LEK) interview surveys to better understand distribution and threats to AHD. These will target fishers and coastal community members to harness local knowledge and understanding of the dolphins' distribution and habitat use as well as the threats they face from bycatch or other coastal activities.
- In-depth assessments of the risks posed to AHD by small-scale coastal fisheries as well as coastal development projects throughout the species range. These can build on the LEK interview surveys and incorporate habitat modelling and inventories of planned coastal construction or other industrial activities that may impact AHD habitat.
- Development of materials (in appropriate target languages) to support outreach and awareness raising for different stakeholder groups ranging from schools and coastal (fishing) communities to park rangers, government managers or industry stakeholders. These can be made available through the trilingual [CCAHD website](#) as well as workshops, or face-to face meetings.
- Organisation of workshops and educational outreach events in coastal communities bordering AHD habitat, to disseminate educational materials and engage communities in grassroots conservation efforts, beginning with awareness and reporting networks, and working toward a longer-term goal of community-based sustainable conservation strategies.
- Targeted outreach to government and industry stakeholders to raise awareness of AHD and the threats they face, in order to promote and offer support for conservation planning and mitigation of bycatch and other threats.
- Increased support for cetacean scientists and conservation organisations in AHD range states, through provision of hands-on training, remote or in-person lectures, data collection protocols and guides.
- Formation of local or national reporting and/or stranding networks, and provision of support for individuals or organisations willing to act as data collectors for these networks.

In identifying these urgent short- and medium-term conservation and management actions this report builds on important initial work conducted by scientists and conservation organisations throughout the species' confirmed and suspected range states, and envisages a coordinated effort in which a wide range of national and international partners pool their resources and expertise to begin implementing conservation-based research and improved management of threats as soon as possible. It is hoped that this report can serve as a roadmap to define goals for action and funding.

# 1. Background and context

---

## 1.1 History of the CCAHD

The Consortium for the Conservation of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin (CCAHD) was formed in response to growing concerns regarding the declining conservation status of the Atlantic humpback dolphin (AHD, *Sousa teuszii*) species over recent decades. These concerns have been increasingly recognised and highlighted by several international organisations in the last five years, including:

- The uplisting of the Red List conservation status from Vulnerable to [Critically Endangered](#) <sup>[1]</sup> by the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) in 2017;
- The adoption of a [Concerted Action for Atlantic Humpback Dolphins](#) by the Convention on Migratory Species (CMS) in 2017;
- Repeated recommendations for research and conservation actions for the species by the International Whaling Commission's (IWC) Scientific Committee, including the formation of an Africa-Focused *Sousa* Task Team during 2020;
- The Integrated Conservation Planning for Cetaceans (ICPC) [workshop](#) held in Nuremberg, Germany in December 2018, which identified AHDs as one of five small cetacean species most likely to slide toward extinction unless there is urgent conservation intervention.

Despite these recent statements of concern about the species, little progress has been made to date towards translating such concerns into management measures and realised conservation effort on the ground within the AHD range states. During an opportunistic meeting at the World Marine Mammal Conference (WMMC) in Barcelona in December 2019, a group of international scientists, including several from AHD range states, discussed the lack of progress made, and potential ways to reinvigorate conservation efforts for AHDs. The CCAHD was formed during 2020, following on from the Barcelona meeting, with the broad goal of continuing to increase momentum to conserve the species, and to serve as a common platform for various efforts being made by different international organisations. In particular, the CCAHD aims to identify and empower national partner organizations and individuals within the species range states and to ensure that the conservation-management actions needed for the species are implemented on the ground. The CCAHD mission statement is:

**Working towards the long-term sustainability of Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*) populations and their habitats through research, awareness, capacity-building and action.**

In September 2020, the Friends of Nuremberg Zoo made seed funding available to kickstart the work of the CCAHD, with the aim of achieving three primary short-term goals by December 2020:

1. To identify scientists and conservation organisations in AHD range state countries and engage them in the consortium to ensure that the CCAHD was fully representative in order to optimize the likelihood of conservation action recommendations being implemented on the ground;
2. The production of this report, which evaluates and defines short- and medium-term priorities for achieving conservation-management actions for AHD, and provide clear and achievable goals and priorities for fund raising efforts;
3. The development of a trilingual (French, Portuguese and English) [website](#) that would help to raise awareness about the AHD, the threats it faces and its conservation status within all range states, and provide resources to local communities and a wide range of stakeholders involved in AHD conservation.

## 1.2 Objectives of this report

Recommendations for the conservation of the AHD have been made for decades. Numerous and ground-breaking regional projects implemented in the late 1990s and early 2000's were instrumental in highlighting the plight of the species, and the need for coordinated and target action for its conservation. Despite these efforts, research and on-the-ground conservation efforts have not achieved the scale required to prevent the continued decline of the species. There are still large knowledge gaps in relation to species distribution, potential refugia or hotspots as well as causes of mortality or drivers of decline. Funding and capacity have generally been the two main limiting factors preventing more meaningful conservation action, while the rapid expansion of regional gillnet fisheries and inshore development continue to threaten the species. The



internationally endorsed initiatives and recommendations of the CMS, IUCN and IWC have served as repeated alarm calls to scientists and conservation organisations around the world. Lessons learned during the declines and extinctions of other inshore cetacean species and populations (including, most notably, the [vaquita](#)) suggest that there is an urgent need to support research and conservation action in AHD range countries. By identifying and refining priority conservation actions, it is hoped that this report can serve as a roadmap to define short/medium and longer term goals for action and funding.

The report builds on previous documents that defined broad targets following the first opportunistic meeting of the CCAHD in Barcelona (see Weir and Collins 2020 and [Appendix 1](#)), and a follow-up document that synthesised and refined these targets for review by the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission in May 2020 (see Weir et al. 2020). These targets fell under three broad areas:

1. Increase awareness, capacity and protection, through engagement within range states;
2. Fill knowledge gaps, to inform conservation and management decisions; and
3. Implement immediate actions to address threats.

It was recognised that these targets needed to be objectively assessed and ranked, in order to better inform a longer-term conservation plan, such as that proposed by the CMS Concerted Action, as well as more immediate planning of conservation action and fund-raising efforts. As such, this report presents the results of the target assessment process, and provides a compiled list of the recommendations for priority actions for AHD conservation. The assessment included approximate budget estimates for the proposed priority actions, which will allow CCAHD partners to respond rapidly to grant and funding opportunities.

### 1.3 Working Methods

In February 2020, initial invitations were sent to the participants of the Barcelona WMMC meeting to request their further participation in a series of Working Groups (WGs) established to address each of the short- and medium-term priority targets identified by Weir and Collins (2020 – available as [Appendix 1](#)) which were based on the discussions that took place at the WMMC. A convener was identified to facilitate each WG (Table 1). A reporting template and Terms of Reference were provided to each convener as guidance for the WG discussions and to optimize standardization in the reporting outputs. Membership of each WG (see [Appendix 3](#)) was expanded as additional members were identified from within the species range and invited to join. It is emphasized that the latter process is ongoing, and the participation and leadership of African nationals within the WGs is expected to increase markedly over time.

The WGs were asked to objectively assess each target (see Table 1), and amend it as necessary. This was variously accomplished by each WG convener, via a series of group video calls and circulation of draft documents for discussion and input in the period between September and November 2020. The reporting template included sections to: 1) identify and rank the data or resource gaps related to each target specifically with regard to potential conservation-management benefits to AHD; 2) assess potential methodologies to address those gaps; 3) make overall recommendations for priority short/medium-term and longer-term actions related to each identified gap; and 4) provide an approximate budget and resource list for accomplishing the priority short/medium-term action. Following submission of the WG templates, the results were compiled into this summary report by the editors.

**Table 1:** CCAHD working groups and convenors. Initial working group meetings took place between October and November 2020, and are expected to be ongoing.

| Working Group  | Targets to assess, as identified by Weir and Collins, 2020   | Convenor(s)                         |
|--|--|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Increasing awareness, capacity building and protection measures</b> |  |                                     |
| 1  | 1.1. Progress the CMS Concerted Action   | Tim Collins                         |
| 2  | 1.2. Outreach/Awareness/Capacity building activities in communities and with local scientists and governments  | Lucy Keith-Diagne and Gianna Minton |
| <b>Filling Knowledge Gaps</b>  |  |                                     |
| 3  | 2.1. Conduct an abundance-distribution survey of the Senegal-Gambia population; and<br>2.2. Extend the Senegal-Gambia approach to other key range states   | Caroline Weir                       |
| 4  | 2.3. Assess genetic diversity and population structure   | Michael McGowen                     |
| 5  | 2.4. Improve the sampling of dead animals  | Forrest Gomez                       |
| 6  | 2.5 Assessments of occurrence in other potential range states via interview surveys; and<br>3.2 Conduct interview surveys to identify other populations for which specific population-level threats likely exist | Gill Braulik                        |
| 7  | 2.6 Carry out preliminary investigations that will inform future health assessments and invasive work where it is deemed necessary as a means to conserve the species  | Forrest Gomez                       |
| 8  | 2.7 Investigate the potential for acoustic monitoring  | Caroline Weir                       |
| <b>Addressing threats and promoting action</b>                         |  |                                     |
| 9  | 3.1 Conduct bycatch mitigation work in Congo in partnership with the IWC BMI   | Marguerite Tarzia                   |
| 10   | 3.3 Address threat level from commercial coastal development   | Tom Jefferson                       |
| 11   | 4.2 Establish an expert panel to identify the priority Targets and direct funding  | Tim Collins                         |
| 12   | 4.3 Source funding. Assess and advise on potential funding opportunities, and input as needed on funding applications  | Lorenzo von Fersen                  |

Completed reporting templates were submitted by WGs 2–10, and are included in full in Appendices 4–12. Working Group 1, the working group addressing the implementation of the CMS Concerted Action, met once, and discussed the formation of a Steering Committee for the Concerted Action, which would include members of the WG as well as additional scientists and government representatives from the AHD range states.

Working Group 11 has not met yet, as the CCAHD hopes to increase membership and participation from AHD range states before formally establishing its Expert Panel or Steering Committee.

Working Group 12 met once, and discussed mechanisms for receiving and administering funds on behalf of the CCAHD, as well as a potential funding sources that can be approached in 2021. The group actively maintains a master spreadsheet of funding opportunities.

Once working Group reports and minutes were completed, their identified gaps and recommended actions were collated into a matrix to identify overlap and synergy between them. The results are summarised in Sections 2 and 3 of this report, presenting the WG assessment of data gaps and recommended actions respectively.

## 1.4 Review

The first draft of this report was completed in mid-December and was reviewed by Working Group Conveners. Comments from this group were integrated and a revised version shared in both French and English with the wider CCAHD membership for their input and feedback. This feedback was then integrated in both language versions in February 2021. This report is intended to be a 'living' document, which can be updated over time in response to local conservation priorities and needs.

## 1.5 Structure of this report

As noted above, each WG identified and ranked the key knowledge, resource and capacity gaps under their target(s), in the specific context of achieving conservation and management of AHDs. Section 2 of this report summarises the results of the assessment of priority conservation gaps that need to be addressed under each of the subheadings of knowledge gaps (Section 2.1), resource gaps (Section 2.2) and capacity gaps (Section 2.3). Section 3 summarises the results of working groups' assessments of the priority actions recommended to address those gaps. All of the recommended actions correlate directly to an identified gap. However, in many cases, a single recommended action addressed multiple gaps identified by separate working groups. As such, rather than being presented as a 1:1 correlation of gap to action, recommended actions are listed with reference to the (sometimes multiple) working groups that recommended them. More detail on how each recommended action can be implemented and how it specifically addresses the identified gaps can be found in the detailed working group reports in Appendices 4-12. Section 4 provides some general conclusions and recommendations for follow-up actions to this report.

# 2. Identification of priority knowledge, resource and capacity gaps

---

## 2.1 Knowledge gaps

The distribution range of the AHD extends from Western Sahara in the north to Angola in the south; however, its presence has only been confirmed in 13 of the 19 countries within that range <sup>[2-4]</sup>. The lack of confirmed records from the remaining six countries may be due to a lack of dedicated cetacean survey effort in those countries, or it may reflect genuine distribution gaps <sup>[2-4]</sup>.

Only three populations have been studied in the field using photo-identification methods to assess numbers, site fidelity and movements <sup>[e.g. 5, 6, 7]</sup>. Other studies have focussed on establishing the species occurrence, as well as identifying threats, including bycatch and direct hunting. The latter have been accomplished by monitoring fish landing sites and interviewing fishers <sup>[e.g. 8, 9-15]</sup>. However, systematic survey effort has not been completed in most range states, and significant knowledge gaps remain.

The following knowledge gaps were identified as highly significant with regard to achieving effective conservation of the species. The conservation relevance of each gap and the Working Groups (WGs) that identified it are described (see [Appendices 3–12](#) for further details). All of these knowledge gaps were considered priorities, and consequently the list is not ranked in order of priority, but rather in the order of the working groups that ranked each gap during their assessments.

- **Quantitative data on the causes of population decline** (WGs [2,5,6,7,9,10](#)). Although bycatch in coastal, small-scale gillnet fisheries is strongly suspected to be the most significant cause of mortality for the species throughout its range, concrete data on small scale fishing activity, spatial/temporal overlap of fishing effort with AHD and bycatch records is lacking to support that assumption in most countries. Direct hunting, and coastal development, including port construction and activities that generate pollution and run-off may also have a significant impact on the species in some areas. Generating quantitative data on the threats impacting species survival, would underpin the targeted



design of mitigation actions, and support outreach and education work focussed on policy and practice to reduce threats.

- **Information on the species' spatial and temporal distribution** (presence/absence and relative abundance (WGs [3,6,8,10](#)). The lack of systematic (effort-related) data on when and where the species occurs is a significant hindrance to identifying the key areas to focus conservation efforts or mitigating threats. Existing datasets are limited to relatively small study sites or short temporal timeframes.
- **Information on relative or absolute abundance and/or population trends** (WGs [3,6](#)). Currently only the most rudimentary estimates of population sizes are available for most areas <sup>[2]</sup>, and only four studies have provided population size estimates underpinned by scientific data <sup>[5-7]</sup>. No data are available on trends in abundance over time. Data on population abundance and trends are fundamental to species status assessments. Similarly, information on relative abundance would allow for distribution hotspots to be identified and efforts to be targeted into key areas that may be refugia or hotspots. The lack of baseline data throughout the species range hampers efforts to engage with the stakeholders who have the power to implement policies and practice that could improve the species conservation status.
- **Information on site fidelity, population connectivity and movements within and between study populations (including estimates of genetic diversity and health across and within populations)** (WGs [3,4,10](#)). It is currently unclear whether the 'populations' identified in different geographic regions are isolated, or whether some mixing occurs between different regions. Clarifying the amount of connectivity between AHD populations in different regions is important to be able to design appropriate conservation actions and maintain genetic diversity. It will also inform decisions regarding potential captive breeding and translocation in the case of catastrophic decline.
- **Information on life history and reproductive parameters** (WGs [3,5,7](#)). Understanding social structure, and particularly reproductive parameters is crucial to understanding the species' conservation needs. Reproductive parameters (e.g. frequency of calving and the age at which animals start to reproduce) are used to calculate population trends and possible trajectories.
- **Clarification of the taxonomic status of AHD in relation to other species in the *Sousa* genus** (WGs [4,5](#)). While the AHD is currently recognised as a species distinct from other *Sousa* species, more evidence is required to support genetic distinctions.
- **Data on common diseases and/or toxin contaminant exposure** (WGs [5,7](#)): Currently there is no information on the diseases or contaminants that may affect AHD. These factors are considered likely to play a significant role in population declines of other cetacean species, and can be an indicator of the health and integrity of their marine coastal habitats <sup>[16-18]</sup>.
- **Data on diet and prey** (WGs [5,7](#)). Apart from some opportunistic observations of prey captures and stomach content analyses, the species' dietary habits and prey preferences remain poorly understood. Understanding the relationships between AHD populations and their prey will yield insights into overlaps with fisheries and/or identify habitats where preferred prey has been documented through fisheries statistics, but dolphins have not yet been documented.
- **Information on potential developments and environmental conditions in AHD habitat** (WGs [7,10](#)). Although it is apparent that AHDs occupy a variety of nearshore habitats (e.g. open coasts, bays, mangrove creeks), the environmental factors that comprise optimal habitats for the species, including in different seasons or in different life stages, remain largely unquantified due to lack of survey effort and of available fine-scale environmental data. Furthermore, data gaps exist on how those habitats are being affected by human habitation, including sewage, coastal runoff, urban expansion and construction projects. The scale of, and extent to which, these activities directly and indirectly (i.e. through altered and contaminated habitats) affect AHDs needs to be clarified in order to inform threat mitigation and better understand the potential impacts of future research efforts.
- **Information on vital physiological statistics** under natural circumstances, and in response to boats, nets, capture or external stimuli (respiratory rates, heart rates, etc) (WG [7](#)). In the case of catastrophic population decline, it may become necessary to consider a range of Integrated Conservation Planning options, which can, in extreme circumstances include ex-situ methods (as [defined by IUCN](#)) to protect (a portion of) the last remaining individuals of a species <sup>[19]</sup>. These options

can include heightened protection for smaller manageable portions of natural habitat, as well as more drastic translocation efforts to protected habitats. In that scenario, it would be necessary to have data on the species' normal physiological statistics, as well as on their responses to vessels, capture and handling, prior to their population sizes becoming so small that attempting to collect those data is considered unacceptably risky to the future of the species <sup>[19, 20]</sup>.

- **Species response to medication and drugs** (WG 7). A small number of humpback dolphins belonging to other *Sousa* species have been kept under human care, and thus treated with various medications over the years, but nothing is known about how AHD might respond to medication or drugs should it ever become necessary to treat or rehabilitate stranded individuals or resort to translocation and/or *ex-situ* conservation strategies.
- **Effectiveness of acoustic monitoring in AHD habitats**, including how to distinguish AHD vocalisations from other species, especially the bottlenose dolphin, *Tursiops truncatus*, with which it is frequently sympatric. Developing an understanding of how much time *S. teuszii* is vocalizing for, and thus available for detection by acoustic devices, is also considered critical in order to assess whether passive acoustic techniques can be used for long-term population monitoring (WG 8). Passive acoustic methods have proven effective for documenting and monitoring the distribution of other threatened small cetacean populations over time, with particular success for vaquita (*Phocoena sinus*) in the Upper Gulf of California <sup>[21]</sup> and Baltic harbour porpoises (*P. phocoena*) <sup>[22]</sup>. Under the right conditions, this method can be used to collect data continuously over a wide geographical range and over extended periods of time. Almost no acoustic monitoring has occurred to date for AHDs, and its feasibility depends on establishing: (1) whether the vocalisations of AHDs can be reliably distinguished from those of other sympatric odontocetes; (2) how vocalisation rate affects availability for detection, and (3) whether acoustic deployments can successfully occur in the shallow, tidal habitats most favoured by the species.
- **Effective strategies for mitigating bycatch in small scale coastal fisheries** (WG 9). Although bycatch in small scale fisheries is reasonably assumed to be the most significant cause of population declines throughout the species' range, the scientific community recognises that there are currently very few truly effective methods available to reduce bycatch, particularly in artisanal gillnet fisheries. Fishing communities and conservation managers throughout the AHD range need tools that can reduce bycatch without threatening important sources of food security and income for coastal communities. These tools may involve fishing gear modifications, implementation of time-area restrictions to certain types of fishing or gear, economic incentives, or a combination of strategies that need to be tested for their effectiveness in the context of the fisheries that overlap with AHD habitat.

## 2.2 Resource Gaps

Many of the data gaps above have been identified by previous AHD research and conservation initiatives. One of the major barriers to implementing actions to address these gaps has been the enormous resource gaps that exist throughout the species' range. Resource gaps identified by the working groups focused predominantly on funding, manpower and communication tools to reach different stakeholders. Resource gaps included:

- **Paid personnel** (all WGs): With over 50 active members, the CCAHD benefits from a wealth of cetacean conservation expertise and good will. However, apart from roughly one month's salary for a part-time coordinator, and small, short-term paid consultancies for website design and translation in late 2020, all of the CCAHD effort carried out to date has been offered on a voluntary basis or compensated *gratis* by the organisations with which members are affiliated. This level of volunteer effort is not sustainable in the medium or long term. Properly compensated work, funded through grants, consultancies, or time incorporated into the existing job descriptions of those involved with AHD conservation efforts, will be essential to maintain and expand conservation efforts.
- **Funding** (all WGs): Conservation-based research conducted under the auspices of CMS in the early 2000's identified a number of the priority conservation needs for AHD, and repeated recommendations have since been made by CMS, IUCN and IWC. To date, a lack of funding has been the greatest barrier to implementing the many recommendations that have been made over the years, including data collection, stakeholder meetings, and mitigation work. This is partly due to

point 1 above, because nobody has been funded to produce funding proposals; a catch-22 situation. In addition to one-off sources of funding for specific research or conservation actions, it is important to identify sustainable sources of financing for threat mitigation, that do not rely on external/international donors.

- **Communication materials** (WGs [2,4,5,6,7,10](#)): Many WGs noted that the lack of availability of materials on the occurrence, status of, and threats to, AHDs. In particular, the accessibility of existing and future materials should be improved, i.e. produced in range state languages and freely available to download. A range of communication materials (from scientific papers/reports to posters and educational materials) are needed to raise awareness and involve coastal (fishing) communities, schools, government agencies, and industry decision-makers in AHD conservation efforts. All possible communication channels (e.g. internet/mobile app/social media) should be evaluated (depending on country-specific circumstances) to disseminate content/knowledge within the local population.
- **Multilingual manuals and guidelines and support networks for data collectors** (WGs [2,4,5,7,10](#)). While various stranding response, necropsy, cetacean survey and conservation planning manuals are available in French, English, Portuguese and Spanish, they are frequently overwhelming to inexperienced personnel in both length and content. Consequently, it can be difficult for local practitioners on the ground to choose the right tools and extract the practical information that they need, particularly if they have to make rapid decisions in response to a stranding, sighting or other data collection opportunities. There is a need for easily accessible, clearly illustrated, step-by-step guidelines, manuals and data collection forms, produced in all range state languages. Additionally, it would be beneficial to have means to provide real-time advice and support to data collectors and/or stranding responders. Providing these tools and disseminating them through the CCAHD website and other channels could lead to improved data and sample collection, including increased samples to allow various analyses of tissues and potential cell preservation (WGs [4](#), [5](#) and [7](#)).

## 2.3 Capacity Gaps

A significant barrier to progress on conservation recommendations for AHD has been a general lack of awareness and capacity among the stakeholders who are most appropriately placed to take action. These stakeholders range from the fishers and coastal communities who share habitat and resources with the dolphins to the growing number of environment-focused non-governmental organisations (NGOs) in AHD range states, as well as government agencies and industries. Specific gaps in this category identified by the WGs include the following. Again, these are not ranked in order of priority, but rather are listed in the order of the WGs that considered them.

- **Lack of awareness of AHD conservation status and threats among coastal communities, including school children and fishers** (WGs [2,6](#)). Placing value on species and motivating local people to protect them, depends on their having awareness of the importance of that species and their potential impacts upon it. CCAHD partners in AHD range states confirm that many coastal communities are simply not aware of the AHD or its precarious status, and are unaware of legal protections in place for cetaceans.
- **Lack of awareness of AHD conservation status, threats and management/mitigation options among government agencies / managers responsible for marine / coastal conservation** (WGs [2,10](#)). Government agencies may not be aware of the distribution or conservation status of AHDs in their countries, and therefore may not specifically consider the species when approving coastal development plans, creating and maintaining protected areas, designing fisheries policy, or conducting any other kind of coastal zone management activities. They may unintentionally allow activities to occur that are detrimental to the species' continued survival and contravene existing protective legislation. They are also likely to be unaware of the potential mitigation measures that could be implemented to reduce or offset the impacts of coastal activities, or to initiate or support any research or conservation efforts for the species.
- **Lack of effective reporting networks for sightings, bycatch or stranding events**, and individuals or organisations who could coordinate national or state/province-level sighting and reporting schemes (WGs [2,4,5,7](#)). Increased reports of sightings and strandings would help to fill data gaps on the

species' distribution, life history and causes of death (in the case of strandings). These networks require focal points with the tools and understanding to collect/solicit, collate and share data.

- **Need for more suitably-trained, experienced and supported scientists in AHD range states with experience in different elements of AHD conservation-based research**, including photo-identification, sample collection, etc. (WGs [2,3,4,5,6,7,8](#)). Experienced scientists from elsewhere in the range, or even those internationally, can help to collect data and train locals. However, it is recognized that only local scientists will be able to effectively and sustainably monitor populations over time and ensure that relevant government agencies are actively engaged in their long-term protection and management.

## 3. Recommended actions

---

### 3.1 Priority short- and medium-term actions

Each WG assessed the available methods or actions that could be used to address each of the priority gaps that they had identified. Multiple methods or actions were available to address some gaps, and WGs were asked to assess the likely achievability and constraints of each. They were then requested to select a single priority activity (in a conservation-management context) to address each gap over: (a) the short/medium-term (<2 years) (b) the longer-term (>2 years). In some cases, multiple WGs recommended the same activities to address shared or separate/multiple gaps. As such, the recommended actions below are not presented as a 1:1 correlation between gap and action. More detailed accounts of the recommended actions and methodologies, and how they address specific gaps identified by each working group are provided in the WG templates in [Appendices 4-12](#).

#### 3.1.1. Actions to address knowledge gaps

As highlighted in Section 2.1, there are significant knowledge gaps for the AHD. However, the WG assessments revealed that a few targeted actions could address multiple data gaps at the same time, if they are carefully planned and implemented. The highest priority short- and medium-term actions are summarised below. As with the identified gaps in Section 2, these are not ranked by priority, but rather in the order of the working groups that made these recommendations.

- **Field surveys in the Senegal-Gambia region** to document distribution and relative abundance, focusing on the expansion of photo-identification catalogues for mark-recapture analysis and mapping individual movements/ranges. These surveys should be conducted in a systematic effort-related manner that facilitates mapping of relative abundance (e.g. encounter rates per unit of sampling effort) between different habitats, seasons and years. Surveys should include local scientists to promote capacity building, as well as environmental sampling to support habitat modelling. For more detail on recommended methodology for the surveys see the full report for [WG 3](#). WGs 2, 7, 8, and 10 also strongly supported fieldwork for its potential to involve hands-on training for local scientists, inclusion of passive acoustic methods, and collection of water quality and other environmental samples.
- **Extend field surveys to other range states**, also with a focus on documenting distribution, relative abundance, and starting/expanding photo-identification catalogues. [WG 3](#) ranked Guinea and Guinea-Bissau as two of the highest priority locations for future survey work following those that are already planned for Senegal; however, it was emphasised that at this stage ***all potential and confirmed range states required effort***, but Mauritania, the Gambia, Nigeria, Cameroon, Gabon and the Republic of Congo are sites where the species is known to occur and would be of interest for more detailed field surveys. Please see the full report from [WG 3](#) for more detail on recommended locations and methodology. These surveys were also recommended by WGs 2,7 and 10, for their potential to include capacity building and hands-on training for local scientists, and to collect water quality and other environmental samples.

- Collection of AHD tissue samples for **genetic analysis**: Collection of genetic samples will necessitate coordination and capacity building for scientists in range states, who should also be trained in analyses whenever appropriate and possible. Wherever possible genetics labs in range state countries should be involved in analyses to help build local capacity and ownership. Analyses conducted on new samples, as well as the few existing samples available from museum collections and other sources can be used to clarify the taxonomic status of AHD within the genus of *Sousa* and to generate mitochondrial genomes for all currently available AHD samples to address the data gaps identified under section 2.1 above. For more details, see the full report from [WG 4](#).
- **Design and initiate local ecological knowledge (LEK) interview surveys** throughout the AHD range to assess current distribution (presence/absence and possibly relative abundance) and characterise fisheries and threats (e.g. bycatch, hunting) to the AHD. Multiple knowledge gaps related to distribution, relative abundance and threats can potentially be addressed using a single, carefully designed, interview. Work is recommended to take place in several phases, starting with identifying the questions that need to be answered and drafting the questionnaire, a pilot study to test the questionnaire in at least two locations, at least one where AHD are relatively well known and fairly common and another where information is lacking. Following the pilot study, the questionnaire would be refined and extended using the same methodology to as many range states as possible, keeping in mind the geographic priorities identified. For more details on these priority locations and proposed methodology, see the full report of [WG 6](#).
- Conduct a **desk-based review of all literature on *Sousa* sp. to determine what information is available to address data gaps with regards to health and reproductive parameters**. Where no data is available for AHD, data from other *Sousa* species (preferably *S. plumbea*) will be valuable to catalogue data that may be useful for understanding health and reproduction. For a more details see the full report of [WG 7](#).
- **Acoustic studies** that deploy F-PODs and SoundTraps at suitable nearshore sites and employ/train community members and/or park rangers to **conduct concurrent visual observations** (with or without theodolites) to facilitate distinction of AHD vocalisations from other species, and to understand how often/likely they are to be vocalising when present. It is considered that the Republic of Congo or Gabon would be ideal choices for this study, but suitable sites likely exist in a number of range states, including Senegal, where other fieldwork is planned and already funded. The use of incentives in the form of payments for acoustic devices retrieved or data collected, have been shown to be effective and would provide valuable experience. For more detail, see the full report from [WG 8](#).
- **Acoustic studies that include focal group acoustic deployments with both F-PODs and SoundTraps** from a vessel with both bottlenose dolphins and AHD in at least one site where both species are known to occur - for example Angola, Congo, Gabon and Guinea-Bissau. For more detail, see the full report from [WG 8](#).
- Conduct a pilot study in a region known to be of importance for *S. teuszii* to **deploy static acoustic devices across different habitat types** that would facilitate comparisons of environmental noise and deployment challenges across sites while also providing initial data on dolphin occurrence. The priority recommended activity is for three acoustic deployments (F-PODs, and perhaps also simultaneous SoundTraps if budget allows) to occur in three different habitats (e.g. mangrove channel, semi-enclosed estuarine habitat, and open marine coast) within the Saloum Delta in Senegal for a full year. The results would be analyzed to determine achievable performance in detecting *S. teuszii* and rejecting other acoustic sources across a range of habitats, and will provide data on dolphin seasonal occurrence at the sites. For more details on the recommended methodology and budget, see the full report from [WG 8](#).
- **Conduct a bycatch rapid assessment in the Conkouati-Douli National Park, Congo and the rest of the Congolese coastline** using data available from past cetacean and fisheries work <sup>[23, 24]</sup>. See the full report of [WG 9](#) for more detail.
- Generate an **inventory of current and planned coastal development projects in AHD range countries** and their potential impact on the species. A first phase of the inventory could involve a questionnaire the CCAHD network of range-state partners and use of IUCN, CMS and IWC contacts to identify



appropriate government contacts. A funded consultancy might yield a higher quality inventory more quickly. Ideally data on current and planned developments would be stored in a central online database accessible by CCAHD members. Analysis of potential impacts should include explicit consideration of the progressive loss of AHD habitats to coastal development, the role that lenders play in this loss, and the inadequacy of current EIA standards. For more detail on the proposed methodology see the full report of [WG 10](#).

### 3.1.2 Actions to address resource gaps

- **Design a map-based infographic** and presentations that highlight the critically endangered status of the species and raise awareness of the potential threats to it and its habitats to support awareness and capacity raising efforts with government and industry stakeholders. Such an infographic, perhaps similar to those developed for [Arabian Sea humpback whales](#) or [Chinese White dolphins](#) in Hong Kong. See the full report of [WGs 2](#) and [10](#) for more detail.
- **Develop manuals and support materials for data collectors** including species identification guides, fact sheets, tiered stranding response guidance, tiered protocols for sample collection from live strandings and bycaught or stranded carcasses, sighting reporting forms etc. The manuals and support materials should be illustrated, and presented as simply and clearly as possible. They should also be available in at least the three most prominent languages for AHD range states: English, French and Portuguese (and ideally also Spanish). For more details see the full reports of [WGs 2, 4, 5, 6](#) and [7](#).
- **Assemble and distribute stranding response/sampling kits to stranding networks as they are being formed.** Lack of equipment and storage medium (e.g. ethanol) for the collection and storage of samples is currently a hindrance to the collection of samples from dead animals, and is needed alongside sampling protocols and training. See the full report of [WG 5](#) for more detail.
- **Produce best practice guidelines for the evaluation of coastal development projects** that include: 1) an overview of the potential impacts of coastal development activities on AHD; 2) the minimum requirements for the collection and analysis of baseline data that should be available for Environmental Impact assessments; and 3) information on how potential impacts can be mitigated. These best practice guidelines could help to guide government agencies responsible for evaluating and approving coastal development projects, and could also encourage industries, particularly those with international 'green credentials' to better incorporate AHD conservation needs into their planning. For more details see the full report of [WG 10](#).

### 3.1.3. Actions to address capacity gaps

- Conduct **community-based workshops** to promote awareness of the species and its conservation needs, and the role of community members in reporting dolphins and mitigating threats. Numerous studies have demonstrated the value and importance of involving local communities, particularly fishers, in data collection and conservation efforts. Community-based workshops, supported by various education and outreach materials can help to raise awareness and involvement in coastal cetacean conservation<sup>[25, 26]</sup> (For more details see the full report of [WG 2](#)).
- Create **posters, educational materials, promotional materials for communities/schools etc.**, to raise awareness and encourage the reporting of strandings, bycatch events, and sightings. The type and scale of products that could be produced is broad, and may vary from one location to the next. At a minimum, a poster encouraging the reporting of dolphin records should be produced in a format in which the text can be easily adapted to different target languages (English, French, Portuguese, but also Spanish, Wolof, Pidgin and potentially other languages commonly used in coastal villages). The posters should include contact details for the CCAHD regional coordinators in each country. Materials could also include colouring sheets, children's stories, and lesson plans, which could be adapted from existing materials for other species in other countries. Finally, re-usable cloth bags, notebooks, T-



shirts and caps with a AHD logo and key conservation messages are also known to be popular and effective in the region, and similar (environmentally and ethically responsibly produced) products could potentially be used as incentives for participation in interview surveys and community workshops. In each case, local partners should help to evaluate the communication channels and tools that would be most effectively reach each target audience in each relevant range state. (for more details see the full report of [WG 2](#)).

- **Develop and maintain a trilingual AHD focused website** to serve as a centralized resource where information and resources (such as identification guides and sampling protocols) can be downloaded by a broad range of stakeholders, including local communities, schools, governments, NGOs and industries (ranked as a priority by WGs [2,4,5,6,10](#))
- In-person and virtual **engagements with policy makers** by range-state partners with, where appropriate, support from international organisations and partners to raise awareness of AHD conservation status and threats, and provide advice on how best to mitigate the potential threats (e.g. through bycatch mitigation, best practices for Environmental Impact Assessments, and the mitigation of coastal development impacts). This will rely heavily on range state partners, and the development of a few key communication tools (e.g. an infographic and power-point presentations) translated into the appropriate language and including relevant detail for the country in question. For more details see the full reports of WGs 1, [2](#) and 10)
- Offer **training for park rangers and fisheries agencies, and leaders of fishing communities who are in the field with opportunities to report and collect data**. Although there are few designated marine protected areas (MPAs) within the AHD range, several countries without any MPAs do have coastal protected areas (See Figure 1). Park rangers in these coastal areas, fisheries officers responsible for monitoring ports and harbours and fish landing sites, and respected local leaders in fishing communities will be well placed to document AHD sightings and strandings (, or incidents of bycatch. Alerting these stakeholders to the precarious conservation status of the species, could yield improved reporting and knowledge of distribution and threats, as well as increased opportunities for sample collection. For more details see the full reports of WGs [2,4,5,6](#), and [10](#).
- Create **national stranding and reporting networks**, including training of coordinators/focal points. Opportunistic sightings reported by members of the public as well as strandings and bycatch records can provide a valuable indication of the presence of AHD and may yield insight into previously undocumented locations and/or highlight potential bycatch or other threat hotspots where conservation interventions are urgently required. Cameroon and Senegal, for example, already have effective reporting networks in place that were initially driven by manatee and sea turtle conservation work, but now include greater focus on cetaceans. In other countries, more support may be needed to identify focal points and ensure they have the tools and support they need to elicit, collate, and effectively archive records. For more detail on this priority activity, see the full reports of WGs [2,4,5,6](#), and [10](#))
- **Identification and support for individual scientists, academic institutions and laboratories** that can advance cetacean research in AHD range states. It is essential that local capacity is developed for long-term cetacean research and monitoring activities, and that local scientists (e.g. from NGOs, governmental agencies, or universities) receive as much support as possible from more experienced colleagues from both within and outside the region. Support can be provided through buddy/mentor systems, similar to that set up for manatee researchers in the region in from 2015 onward, and is also in place through the Conservation and Research of West African Aquatic Mammals (COREWAM) network <sup>[e.g. 27]</sup>. Marine mammal science at universities in the region could be supported by the offering of guest lectures (in person or virtual) by CCAHD members. For more details see the full report of [WG 2](#). However, this activity was also identified as priority by WGs 3,4,5,7 and 10.
- Organisation of **regional hands-on training workshops** to include field techniques like distribution surveys, photo-identification, stranding response, sample collection from carcasses etc. Although all fieldwork organised under the auspices of the CCAHD and its partners should include local scientists and local capacity building as an aim, a regional hands-on training workshop, held in a location where AHD were almost certain to be encountered, could be a highly effective means of giving scientists from throughout the region practical experience of boat-based fieldwork (including photo-

identification, habitat parameter sampling, acoustic deployments, etc), interviewing techniques, and/or stranding response and carcass sampling. See the full report of [WG 2](#) for more detail. However, this activity was also ranked as a priority by WGs 3,4,5,6, and 10.

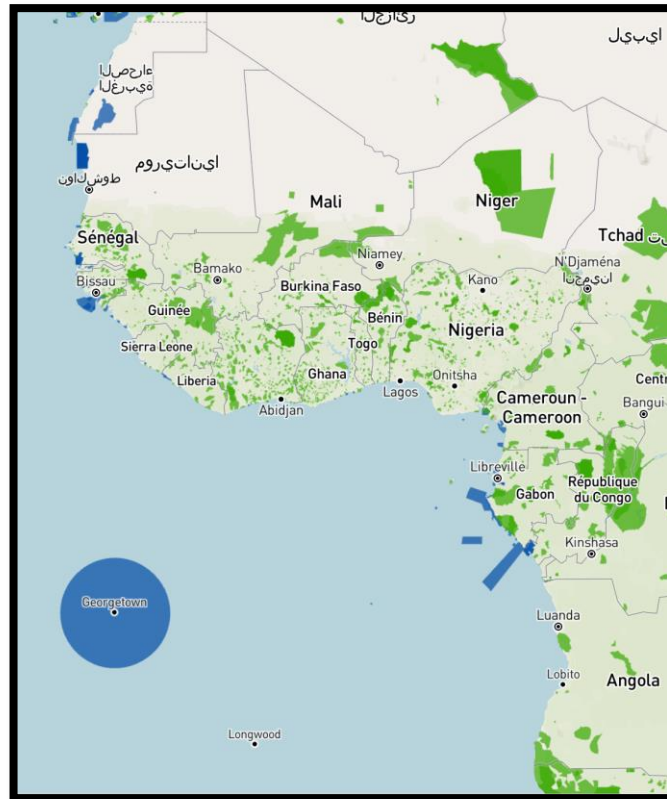
- **Initiate stakeholder and decision maker engagement. Mapping and coordination with other relevant initiatives in the Conkouati-Douli National Park and across Congo** to re-establish networks and ensure enabling conditions are in place to implement a bycatch mitigation pilot project in collaboration with the IWC's bycatch mitigation initiative (BMI). This project would be conducted with the aim of replicating the approach in additional AHD range countries. See the full report of [WG 9](#) for more detail on the proposed step-wise methodology for the development of this project.

### 3.2. Longer term activities

In addition to the short- to medium-term priorities listed in Section 3.1, the WGs were also asked to identify some longer-term priorities for funding. The recommended longer-term activities include:

- **Biopsy sampling** of AHD: Biopsy sampling during field surveys (see section 3.1.1 above) could potentially yield a larger number of samples for genetic analysis, as well as other analyses that would provide insight into contaminant loads (through blubber analysis) and diet (through stable isotope analyses). Genetic samples can also provide insight into the sex of individually identified individuals as well as kinship/relationships between sampled individuals. This is considered a priority for WGs [3](#), [4](#), and [7](#). However, biopsying is considered to be an 'invasive' technique, and *is not recommended without detailed consideration of animal welfare*, including some considerations more specific to AHDs than to many other delphinids (for example, their critically endangered status, the sensitivity of the species to disturbance, and the poor quality of the water in many locations which could potentially increase susceptibility to infection). Consequently, a full risk assessment and best practice protocols would be integral to biopsying and other invasive techniques on this species, and follow-up studies would be recommended to ensure that biopsied individuals do not suffer any negative short-, medium- or long-term effects. Additionally, permitting for biopsying and for importing biopsy equipment can be complicated and may take time to acquire in the AHD range states. It was considered prudent to collect more baseline data on the populations to be sampled through non-invasive techniques before embarking on biopsy sampling. See the full report for WG 3 for more detail.
- **Opportunistic placement of satellite tags on live stranded or bycaught AHD:** WG 7 recommended that a small number of satellite tags be kept in central locations in range states where relatively large populations of AHD are known to occur. Although the chances are very slim that an AHD will live strand or survive an entanglement in a location and at a moment that field teams will be on hand, and have access to the necessary guidance and expertise to place a tag, being prepared for such an unlikely event could yield a wealth of valuable data on AHD behaviour and movements (see , for example [McHugh et al. 2021](#)). It would also provide useful information on how the species responds to human handling. This technique has been safely used with other coastal dolphin populations, but as with biopsying, as a relatively invasive technique, it is recommended here *only in sites where experienced research teams with the necessary veterinary expertise are available to attach the tags, and where teams are also available to monitor the progress of the tagged animal*. See the full report of [WG7](#) for a more detailed assessment of the risks and mitigating factors that could be associated with this work.
- **Implementation of trials for alternative fishing gears and practices in the Conkouati-Douli National Park, Congo.** Following the planned stakeholder re-engagement, and rapid bycatch risk assessment recommended in section 3.1.1 and 3.1.3 (for which partial funding is already available), the IWC BMI Expert Panel will collaborate with local partners to conduct controlled trials of gear and practices to reduce bycatch. These will be evaluated, and if successful, considered for replication in other locations in the AHD range. See the full report of [WG 9](#) for more details. Trials to reduce bycatch should also include identification of sustainable financing mechanisms and market-based incentive schemes that reduce reliance on one-off grants and external sources of funding.

- Work with Government stakeholders to **design, implement and sustain marine protected areas or other management measures** that can eliminate or significantly reduce threats in AHD core habitats. This, of course, is the ultimate goal of all of the above actions. Although MPAs are perceived as one of the most effective ways to safeguard dolphin habitat and eliminate threats, without effective management and enforcement, the designation of an MPA on paper can be less effective than other more targeted management measures that eliminate or reduce specific threats. See the full report of WGs [9](#) and [10](#) for more detail.



**Figure 1:** Marine (blue) and terrestrial/coastal (green) protected areas within the AHD range (downloaded from the World Database of Protected Areas, WDPA <https://www.protectedplanet.net/en/thematic-areas/wdpa>).

### 3.3. Required funding and support

As stated above under section 3.1.2, a lack of funding has been a significant hindrance to implementing conservation actions for the AHD to date. In Table 2, some of the estimated costs (approximate only, for guidance) of implementing the priorities identified above are summarised. The table does not include estimates for the longer-term objectives. For more detailed cost estimates and breakdowns, please refer to the WG templates provided in [Appendices 4-12](#).

In many cases, the approximate costs provided in Table 2 are for only one workshop, or survey in one location, when ultimately multiple parallel efforts are required in several countries at the same time. Additionally, in some cases it may be possible to carry out several of the recommended activities simultaneously, in order to reduce costs. As such, there are no subtotals or grand totals provided, since those might give a false impression of the total funding required to support the species throughout its range.

Although not addressed by any working group as part of its remit, the table includes estimated costs for ongoing funding for the coordination and functioning of the CCAHD network and its website. CCAHD membership is continually growing and, since the establishment of the CCAHD, there has been a surge of conservation planning, fund-raising activity, and the creation of a trilingual website populated with basic resources that can be used by stakeholders in the region to support AHD conservation efforts. To maintain

the momentum that is building for the species, it will be essential to maintain at least part-time paid positions for coordinators, as well as the range state partners responsible for implementation of key activities on the ground. Funding should also be secured to ensure the regular update and maintenance of the CCAHD website, which will serve as the knowledge hub and vehicle for disseminating news and updates and resources related to CCAHD work.

**Table 2:** Summary of required funding and support for priority conservation actions for AHD. Note that in most cases these are cost estimates for actions in single range states only, and thus are only indicative of the costs to address conservation in one location, NOT throughout the species' entire range. Fund-raising for several of these activities has already begun, with three grants secured, and several other applications planned or underway.

| Activity   | Unit   | Rough estimate of total cost (USD) | Potential matching funding or donation in kind as of December 2020 (note that this does not include all the very generous donations of time and expertise committed by CCAHD members)  |
|--|--|------------------------------------|--|
| Recommended activities to address <b>knowledge gaps</b> (and in some cases capacity at the same time)  |  |                                    |  |
| Field surveys in the Senegal-Gambia region   | 3-4 week survey  | \$50,000.00                        | 50,000 USD secured from Loro Parque foundation for 2021, but additional funds required for 2022 and beyond. 2 SoundTraps donated by <a href="#">Ocean Instruments</a> , and 4 Fpods donated by <a href="#">Chelonia</a> Ltd. |
| Replication of field surveys in other areas of known or suspected AHD habitat  | 3-4 week survey for one location                               | \$50,000.00                        |  |
| Confirmation of AHD taxonomic status in the genus.   | Analysis of +/- 100 samples                                    | \$15,000.00                        |  |
| Sequencing and analysing genomic data of the AHD   | Analysis of all available samples                              | \$53,000.00                        | The Smithsonian National Museum of Natural History has a contribution toward this work of 5,000 USD per year from the Rebecca Gwin and James Glen Mead Endowment for Marine Mammal Research                                  |
| Acoustic studies that deploy F-PODs and Sound Traps with concurrent shore-based observations   | 2 sites in one country/study area for several months           | \$44,380.00                        | 2 SoundTraps donated by Ocean Instruments, and 4 Fpods donated by Chelonia Ltd. for use in Senegal in 2021. See WG8 report for more detail.  |
| Boat-based acoustic studies that include focal group acoustic deployments  | single targeted boat survey of 10 days duration                | \$30,000.00                        |  |
| Conduct a pilot study in <i>S. teuszii</i> site, to incorporate static acoustic devices deployed across different habitat types  | One year of monitoring in 3 habitats in on study location      | \$51,600.00                        |  |
| Generate an inventory of current and planned coastal development projects in AHD range countries.  | Creating a shared database                                     | \$20,000.00                        |  |
| Design and Initiate local ecological knowledge (LEK) interview surveys in priority locations   | Design and testing of questionnaire, deployment in 3 countries | \$40,000.00                        | Potential funding available from the IWC Bycatch Mitigation Initiative for some fisheries components of the survey   |
| Conduct a desk-based review of all literature on AHD and other Sousa species to extract and compile health and reproductive information. To include consultation with facilities that keep <i>Sousa</i> of any species under human care. | A complete literature review                                   | \$10,000.00                        |  |

| Activity  | Unit  | Rough estimate of total cost (USD) | Potential matching funding or donation in kind as of December 2020 (note that this does not include all the very generous donations of time and expertise committed by CCAHD members)  |
|---|---|------------------------------------|--|
| Recommended activities to address <b>resource gaps</b> (and in some cases capacity at the same time)  |   |                                    |  |
| Funding for CCAHD <b>coordination and website</b> maintenance (see AHD.org)   | 1 day a week for one year   | \$20,000.00                        | Friends of Nuremberg Zoo supported coordination and the development of the website in 2020 and have indicated an interest in continuing support in 2021  |
| Design a map-based <b>infographic</b> and <b>presentations</b> for govt and industry stakeholders   | 1 infographic in 4 languages  | \$2,000.00                         | Will be partially supported by IUCN SSC Edge grant obtained for government outreach.   |
| Develop <b>manuals and support materials for data collectors</b> -species ID guides, fact sheets stranding response, sample collection, sighting reporting etc. | Multiple guidelines/protocols in 4 languages  | \$40,000.00                        | Uko Gorter has already developed A4 marine mammal species ID guide for the region free of cost, species fact sheets have been developed for AHD and bottlenose dolphins and are available in English, French and Portuguese.   |
| Production of a manual or <b>best practice guidelines</b> for evaluation and mitigation of coastal development activities                                       | Best practice guidelines in 4 languages   | \$20,000.00                        |  |
| Conduct a <b>Bycatch Risk rapid assessment</b> for Congolese coast  | A risk assessment report/publication  | \$25,000.00                        | The International Whaling Commission's Bycatch Mitigation Initiative may have some match funding for this activity. Moderate funds are also available from an earlier grant from the US Marine Mammal Commission   |
| Recommended activities to address <b>capacity and awareness gaps</b> (and in some cases capacity at the same time)  |   |                                    |  |
| <b>Conduct community based workshops</b>  | half- or full-day workshops in five locations   | \$7,500.00                         | Funding for one community workshop is included in the Loro Parque Foundation grant for fieldwork in the Saloum Delta in 2021   |
| Create (hard copy and digital/online) <b>posters, educational materials, promotional materials</b> for communities/schools                                      | Poster and one set of lesson plan materials adaptable for region  | \$10,000.00                        |  |
| In-person and virtual <b>engagements with policy makers</b>   | Five engagements supported by an infographic and ppt presentations  | \$10,000.00                        | This will be (partially) covered by an IUCN SSC EDGE grant that will be implemented between January and July 2021. The CMS Concerted Action foresees a regional in-person meeting of experts and government representatives, and funding is available to support this. |
| Offer <b>training</b> (at academies) for <b>park rangers and fisheries agencies</b> who are in the field with opportunities to report and collect data          | delivery of 1-3 lectures at institutes in 5 locations   | \$5,000.00                         |  |
| Create <b>national stranding and reporting networks</b> , including training of coordinators/focal points   | focal points and communication tools in 5 locations   | \$25,000.00                        | AACF has pending grant proposals to train a new national stranding network for the Gambia and a reporting network in Guinea.   |
| Identification and <b>support for individual scientists and academic institutions</b> and labs that can advance cetacean research in AHD range states           | Guest lectures in 5 institutes  | \$5,000.00                         |  |
| Organization of regional <b>hands-on training workshops to include field techniques</b>   | Two week-long regional workshops for approx. 10 individuals – one for boat-based surveys, 1 on stranding response | \$20,000.00                        |  |
| Stakeholder and decision maker engagement in the Conkouati Douli National Park, Congo, to create enabling conditions for bycatch mitigation trials              |   | \$25,000.00                        | The International Whaling Commission's Bycatch Mitigation Initiative may have some match funding for this activity. Moderate funds are also available from an earlier grant from the US Marine Mammal Commission   |

## 4. Conclusions

---

This report highlights some of the most urgent short- and medium-term conservation and management actions required to work towards the longer-term sustainability of the Atlantic humpback dolphin. It builds on important initial work conducted by scientists and conservation organisations throughout the species' confirmed and suspected range states, and envisages a coordinated effort in which a wide range of national and international partners pool their resources and expertise to begin implementing conservation-based research and improved management of threats as soon as possible. Fund-raising will be an important component of achieving that goal, and ensuring that these efforts are maintained over the longer-term.

The following avenues are fundamental to securing funding and support for the identified priority actions from January 2021 onwards:

- **Continuing expansion and consolidation of the CCAHD**, to increase participation from range state partners, not only in implementation of projects within the range states, but also in WGs, fund-raising efforts, and decision making. WG 11, which was tasked with the formation of an Expert Panel or Steering Committee for the CCAHD has not yet met, as outreach to cetacean scientists and environmental NGOs in range states was still underway. The formalisation of such a panel should be a priority for 2021. The group's formation will be conducted in close collaboration with Working Group 1 which is focusing on the implementation of the CMS Concerted Action, whose steering committee will also include scientists and government stakeholders from AHD range states. At the same time, however, the informal collaboration and voluntary good will that has been established should be harnessed immediately to begin fund raising and projects on the ground.
- **Fund-raising for the identified priorities.** WG 12 is maintaining and updating a list of grant opportunities, and has discussed guidelines and mechanisms for approaching funding (see section 3.3 above). This report, and especially the detailed Appendices containing the WG reports should make it possible for CCAHD members to react quickly and efficiently to funding opportunities, acting on the identified priorities and using the rationales, methodologies and budget estimates that have been prepared.
- **Consolidation of conservation efforts.** The CCAHD, as a collective of scientists, NGOs and individuals, will continue to work collaboratively alongside relevant conservation and management organisations including (but not limited to) the CMS, the IWC and the IUCN to optimize the long-term conservation of AHDs and minimize duplication of efforts or dilution of resources.



## References

1. Collins, T., G.T. Braulik, and W. Perrin, *Sousa teuszii*, in *The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species*. 2017, e.T20425A50372734. Downloaded on 10 December 2017.: <http://www.iucnredlist.org/details/20425/0>.
2. Collins, T., *Re-assessment of the Conservation Status of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin, Sousa teuszii (Kükenthal, 1892), Using the IUCN Red List Criteria*, in *Advances in Marine Biology Volume 72: Humpback dolphins (Sousa spp.) current status and conservation: Part I*, A.J. Thomas and E.C. Barbara, Editors. 2015, Academic Press. p. 47-77.
3. Weir, C.R. and T. Collins, *A Review of the Geographical Distribution and Habitat of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin (Sousa teuszii)*, in *Advances in Marine Biology Volume 72: Humpback dolphins (Sousa spp.) current status and conservation: Part I*, T.A. Jefferson and B.C. Curry, Editors. 2015, Academic Press. p. 79-117.
4. Van Waerebeek, K., et al., *Distribution, status, and biology of the Atlantic humpback dolphin, Sousa teuszii (Kükenthal, 1892)*. *Aquatic Mammals*, 2004. **30**(1): p. 56-83.
5. Weir, C.R., *Atlantic humpback dolphins Sousa teuszii in the Saloum Delta (Senegal): distribution, relative abundance and photo-identification*. *African Journal of Marine Science*, 2016. **38**(3): p. 385-394.
6. Weir, C.R., *Photo-identification and habitat use of Atlantic humpback dolphins Sousa teuszii around the Río Nuñez Estuary in Guinea, West Africa*. *African Journal of Marine Science*, 2015. **37**: p. 325-334.
7. Weir, C., *Distribution, behaviour and photo-identification of Atlantic humpback dolphins Sousa teuszii off Flamingos, Angola*. *African Journal of Marine Science*, 2009. **31**(3): p. 319-331.
8. Ayissi, I., G. Hoinsoude, and K. Van Waerebeek, *Rediscovery of Cameroon dolphin, the Gulf of Guinea population of Sousa teuszii (Kükenthal, 1892)*. *ISDR Biodiversity*, 2014. **819827**: p. doi.org/10.1155/2014/819827.
9. Bamy, I., et al., *Species occurrence of cetaceans in Guinea, including humpback whales with southern hemisphere seasonality*. *Marine Biodiversity Records*, 2010. **3**: p. e48.
10. Debrah, J.S., P.K. Ofori-Danson, and K. Van Waerebeek, *An update on the catch composition and other aspects of cetacean exploitation in Ghana*, in *Document presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission*. 2010, International Whaling Commission. p. 8.
11. Leeney, R.H., et al., *Occurrence of Atlantic humpback (Sousa teuszii) and bottlenose (Tursiops truncatus) dolphins in the coastal waters of Guinea-Bissau, with an updated cetacean species checklist*. *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom*, 2016. **96**(Special Issue 04): p. 933-941.
12. Ofori-Danson, P.K., K. Van Waerebeek, and S. Debrah, *A survey for the conservation of dolphins in Ghanaian coastal waters*. *Journal of the Ghana Science Association*, 2003. **5**: p. 45-54.
13. Segniagbeto, G.H., et al., *Annotated checklist and fisheries interactions of cetaceans in Togo, with evidence of Antarctic minke whale in the Gulf of Guinea*. *Integrative Zoology*, 2014. **9**(1): p. 1-13.
14. Uwagbae, M. and K. Van Waerebeek, *Initial evidence of dolphin takes in the Niger Delta region and a review of Nigerian cetaceans*, in *Document presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission*. 2010, International Whaling Commission.
15. Van Waerebeek, K., et al., *New records of Atlantic humpback dolphin in Guinea, Nigeria, Cameroon and Togo underscore fisheries pressure and generalised marine bushmeat demand*. *Revue d'Ecologie (Terre et Vie)*, 2017. **72**: p. 192-205.
16. Reed, J., et al., *Extreme Effects of Extreme Disturbances: A Simulation Approach to Assess Population Specific Responses*. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 2020. **7**(829).
17. Fernández, A., et al., *Pathology of Marine Mammals: What It Can Tell Us About Environment and Welfare*, in *Marine Mammal Welfare: Human Induced Change in the Marine Environment and its Impacts on Marine Mammal Welfare*, A. Butterworth, Editor. 2017, Springer International Publishing: Cham. p. 585-608.

18. Van Bresseem, M.-F., et al., *Emerging infectious diseases in cetaceans worldwide and the possible role of environmental stressors*. Diseases of Aquatic Organisms, 2009. **86**: p. 143–157.
19. Taylor, B.L., et al., *Ex situ options for cetacean conservation: December 2018 workshop, Nuremberg, Germany*, in *Occasional Paper of the IUCN Species Survival Commission* 2020, IUCN: Gland, Switzerland.
20. Rojas-Bracho, L., et al., *A field effort to capture critically endangered vaquitas Phocoena sinus for protection from entanglement in illegal gillnets*. Endangered Species Research, 2019. **38**: p. 11-27.
21. Jaramillo-Legorreta, A., et al., *Passive acoustic monitoring of the decline of Mexico's critically endangered vaquita*. Conservation Biology, 2017. **31**(1): p. 183-191.
22. Mikkelsen, L., et al., *Comparing Distribution of Harbour Porpoises (Phocoena phocoena) Derived from Satellite Telemetry and Passive Acoustic Monitoring*. PLoS ONE, 2016. **11**(7): p. e0158788.
23. Collins, T., et al., *Progress on Atlantic humpback dolphin conservation and research efforts in Congo and Gabon*. Document presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission, 2013. **SC/65a/SM16 Rev**: p. 24.
24. Metcalfe, K., et al., *Addressing Uncertainty in Marine Resource Management; Combining Community Engagement and Tracking Technology to Characterise Human Behaviour*. Conservation Letters, 2016.
25. Minton, G., et al., *Four Simple Questions: Evaluating the Effectiveness of Half-Day Community Workshops Designed to Increase Awareness of Coastal Cetacean Conservation Issues in Sarawak, Malaysia*. Applied Environmental Education & Communication, 2012. **11**(2): p. 99-107.
26. Armah, F.A., et al., *Participation and sustainable management of coastal lagoon ecosystems: The case of the Fosu lagoon in Ghana*. Sustainability, 2010. **2**(1): p. 383-399.
27. Van Waerebeek, K., et al., *Conservation of cetaceans in the Gambia and Senegal, 1999-2001, and status of the Atlantic humpback dolphin*, in *WAF CET - 2 Report*. 2003: UNEP/CMS. Bonn, Germany. p. 56 pp.

# Appendices

---

## A1. Potential short- and medium-term targets for the conservation of

### *Sousa teuszii*

Prepared by Caroline Weir & Tim Collins Distributed on 29<sup>th</sup> January 2020

#### SYNOPSIS

In this document we have identified a number of short- and medium-term targets to progress conservation efforts for *Sousa teuszii*. These targets incorporate objectives identified at the ESOC workshop<sup>1</sup> in Nuremberg in December 2018, and those identified at the *ad hoc* meeting held at the World Marine Mammal Conference (WMMC) in Barcelona during December 2019. These targets are not prioritised (but ranking them might be a good idea), and should be considered departure points for further discussion and agreement. We also recognize that adopting a longer-term conservation plan, such as the CMS Concerted Action, should remain the overall goal of these efforts.

In contrast to some other small cetaceans of high conservation concern which occur in few or even a single range state (i.e. baiji, vaquita), the contemporary occurrence of *Sousa teuszii* includes (at least) 13 countries: Western Sahara, Mauritania, Senegal, Gambia, Guinea-Bissau, Guinea, Benin, Togo, Nigeria, Cameroon, Gabon, Congo Republic and Angola. A "one size fits all" approach to conserving *Sousa teuszii* is therefore unlikely to be appropriate. It should be recognized that the range states vary in their existing legislative frameworks for protecting dolphins and maintaining biodiversity, in the amounts and types of habitat available for dolphins (*Sousa teuszii* variously occupies exposed marine coasts to river systems in different parts of its range), and in the documented levels of exposure to threats. For example, the population of *Sousa teuszii* in southern Senegal/Gambia is *comparatively* large, uses a variety of marine, estuarine and riverine habitats, and appears to be a *comparatively* low threat population (although some mortality events have been documented). In contrast, in Congo *Sousa teuszii* occurs exclusively along exposed marine coasts, is uncommon, and a significant specific threat has been identified (i.e. bycatch and secondary wildmeat trade). While these examples are over- simplified, they serve to illustrate that the actions required to conserve *Sousa teuszii* need to account for region-specific factors. Additionally, the logistics in range states vary according to resources, infrastructure, remoteness and language, and such practical considerations are relevant to identifying where actions are most likely to succeed.

Overall, most actions required to move forwards the conservation of *Sousa teuszii* can be allocated to three core areas:

**Increase awareness, capacity building and protection measures.** Work with the governments and other relevant agencies (including environmental consultancies) of confirmed and potential range states in order to increase awareness, manage threats and improve/implement legislative elements (both for dolphins and the preservation of their habitats). Actively engage the private sector, including developers. Provide education and awareness of dolphins to local coastal communities (especially fishers). Support capacity building via the training and inclusion of local biologists and other wildlife professionals (e.g. rangers).

**Fill knowledge gaps.** The collection of the field data relevant to filling in critical data gaps, prioritising those data that are needed to support informed conservation and management decisions. Including baseline abundance estimates (and ongoing trends), distribution, genetic diversity/population structure, mortality causes and rates, life history, and health.

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://tiergarten.nuernberg.de/uploads/tx\\_news/ESOC.pressrelease.pdf](https://tiergarten.nuernberg.de/uploads/tx_news/ESOC.pressrelease.pdf)

**Implement immediate actions to address threats.** Directed towards those range states where specific threats (e.g. bycatch) have already been clearly identified as having significant impacts on contemporary dolphin populations, and therefore where implementing immediate actions can be justified even in the absence of robust scientific data on population size or trends.

With the above synopsis in mind, we propose several short- and medium-term targets that represent realistic and achievable options to reignite conservation efforts for the species.

## SHORT- AND MEDIUM-TERM TARGETS

### 1. Increase awareness, capacity building and protection measures

#### *Target 1.1. Progress the CMS Concerted Action (short to medium term)*

- Most of the necessary stakeholder engagement would be achieved by furthering the CMS CA. The first two actions require:
- Establishing a steering committee and organising a meeting of stakeholders. Funding is required.
- Establishing a task force (TF), which would subsequently develop the 5 year plan of action.

#### *Target 1.2. Establish an expert panel to identify priorities and direct funding (short term)*

This would be a core group formed in the short term to direct immediate needs and push momentum forwards, but may also be integrated with the CMS TF.

### 2. Fill knowledge gaps

#### *Target 2.1. Conduct an abundance-distribution survey of the Senegal-Gambia population (short term)*

This population is perhaps one of the largest remaining and apparently subject to some of the lowest anthropogenic pressures (acknowledging that this does not mean no threats at all). Logistics and government connections in Senegal can be facilitated by the African Aquatic Conservation Fund. It is therefore an ideal population to establish a long-term monitoring programme and whose viability we should seek to secure for the future. The most recent information on distribution and population size originates from Oct/Nov 2015. We initially propose two intra- annual surveys in different seasons, since evidence from interview data suggests spatio-temporal shifts. Then annual monitoring thereafter. Permits/agreement are required from both Senegal and Gambia, since last survey was limited to Senegal only. Allow a one-year run-in for permitting.

#### *Target 2.2. Extend the Senegal-Gambia approach to other key range states (medium to long term)*

We highlight Guinea, Guinea-Bissau and Gabon/Congo as three additional key areas supporting contemporary *Sousa teuszii* populations, where abundance/distribution surveys are needed. In particular, there are no recent data from a potentially significant population in Guinea-Bissau.

*Target 2.3. Assess genetic diversity and population structure (medium-term)*

Clarifying population structure is a key requirement for prioritising long-term conservation. Additionally, we need to understand whether the small populations at the extreme north and south of the distribution range (Western Sahara and Angola) are critical to the maintenance of genetic diversity in the species, in order to prioritise effort. Tissue samples (and associated collection permits and CITES export permits) may be challenging to obtain and require longer timeframes. Investigate eDNA (no CITES requirements for water samples) and whether sampling kits could be sent to contacts in range states to investigate haplotype diversity in different areas. Establish a database of available archived samples, including skulls/skeletal remains from which genetic material could potentially be extracted.

*Target 2.4. Improve the sampling of dead animals (medium term)*

Identify what types of samples are most critical for life history, health assessment and genetics. Establish basic sampling/necropsy protocols (in relevant languages) that can be followed with simple training and with the resources realistically available in range states. In key range states where suitable personnel exist, implement training and support with sampling equipment. Prioritise sample collection in range states where dead animals are most accessible, e.g. Congo.

*Target 2.5. Assessments of occurrence in other potential range states*

Baseline assessments via interview surveys<sup>2</sup>, especially in confirmed range states with few records (e.g. Nigeria, Togo), those with no recent records (e.g. Ghana), and in countries that are unconfirmed potential range states (e.g. Sierra Leone), to establish presence and distribution. These initial data will inform future monitoring efforts and engage governments. Could be carried out concurrently with surveys on threats (Target 3.2).

*Target 2.6. Carry out preliminary work that will inform future health assessments and invasive work (short to medium term)*

- To prepare for a future informed evaluation of whether it is justifiable to capture animals (for future health assessments or translocations) or carry out invasive research (e.g. biopsying or tagging), we propose several preliminary studies:
- Develop an incremental strategy for health assessment in partnership with appropriate specialists.
- An assessment of water quality in potential target areas to determine levels of human faecal bacteria and other pollutants in the waterways that could infect open wounds. Are open marine coasts lower risk environments in this respect than rivers/estuaries?
- Collaboration with other proposed capture or invasive research on *Sousa* populations elsewhere in the world, via exchange of information and possible training participation of personnel.
- A literature review of existing information on other *Sousa* populations.

*Target 2.7. Investigate the potential for acoustic monitoring (medium term)*

Acoustic devices can provide good information on cetacean occurrence, but previously it hasn't been possible to distinguish between *Sousa* and *Tursiops* using C-PODs. Newer technologies (e.g. F-PODs, SoundTraps) may be able to accomplish this. A preliminary feasibility study would aid in assessing whether or not acoustic methods could specifically identify *Sousa teuszii* and thus be incorporated into cost-effective long-term monitoring plans.

### **3. Implement immediate actions to address threats**

*Target 3.1. Fund bycatch mitigation work in the Congo Republic (short term)*

While some mortality of *Sousa teuszii* has been documented in most range states, there are few countries where sufficient data exist in a contemporary context to implicate a direct population-level impact. The Congo is one exception, and bycatch mitigation (with governmental support) could potentially be implemented effectively in the short-term with immediate results. A bycatch mitigation program could also incorporate necropsy and other sampling (health assessments), i.e. re-igniting and expanding on Tim's previous work.

*Target 3.2. Conduct interview surveys to identify other populations for which specific population-level threats likely exist (short to medium term)*

Assessments of mortality and threats via interview surveys, targeting fishing communities and markets. Could be carried out concurrently with surveys on threats (Target 2.5). The same potential limitations are highlighted as for Target 2.5.

*Target 3.3. Address threat level from commercial coastal development (short to medium term)*

In some countries there is considerable investment by foreign companies in the development of coastal port facilities for exporting minerals (the estuaries of Guinea are highlighted as one such region). While environmental impact assessments are carried out, these are often based on insufficient data. Given the CR status of *Sousa teuszii*, the impacts of such developments on the species and its habitat should be investigated, and companies encouraged to conduct more extensive baseline assessments and fund longer-term monitoring as part of their offsets. An initial letter of concern could be initiated through the IUCN framework.



## A2. CCAHD membership list

This is a provisional membership list that will be updated as close as possible to the time of final publication.

| Name/Nom                        | Sousa teuszi range state   | Affiliated organisation   |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| Abdellahi Samba Bilal           | Mauritania                 | Laboratoire d'Ecologie et Biologie des Organismes Aquatiques/ Institut Mauritanien de Recherches Océanographiques et des Pêches (IMROP) |
| Aissa Regalla                   | Guinée-Bissau              | département de Suivi et Conservation de la Biodiversité à l'Institut de la biodiversité et des Aires Protégées (IBAP)                   |
| Alexandre Dah                   | Ivory Coast                | CEM = Conservation des Espèces Marines Côte d'Ivoire  |
| Aristide Kamla Takoukam         | Cameroon                   | African Marine Mammal Conservation Organisation   |
| Barbara Taylor                  | International              | NOAA  |
| Bob Brownell                    | International              | NOAA  |
| Carolina Martinez               | Equatorial Guinea          | Tortugas Marinas de Guinea Equatorial   |
| Caroline Weir                   | International              | Ketos Ecology   |
| Cedrick Fogwan                  | Cameroon                   | African Marine Mammal Conservation Organisation   |
| Charley Potter                  | International              | Smithsonian Institution   |
| Charlotte Boyd                  | International              | KBA   |
| Cheibani Senhoury               | Mauritania                 | Conseiller scientifique du directeur parc national du Banc d'Arguin (PNBA)  |
| Constant Ndjassi                | Liberia                    | Flora Fauna International   |
| Ciapha G. Abule                 | Liberia                    | Save my Future Foundation   |
| Cynthia Smith                   | International              | National Marine Mammal Foundation   |
| Dee Allen                       | International              | US Marine Mammal Commission   |
| Doug de Master                  | International              | Society for Marine Mammalogy  |
| Edem Eniang                     | Nigeria                    | University of Uyo, Dept. of Forestry & Natural Environmental Management   |
| Ellen Hines                     | International              | Estuary & Ocean Science Center, San Francisco State University  |
| Els Vermeulen                   | International              | Mammal Research Institute Whale Unit - University of Pretoria   |
| Ema Dilambaka                   | Congo Republic (Conkouati) | WCS Congo/Exeter University   |
| Forrest Gomez                   | International              | National Marine Mammal Foundation   |
| Gianna Minton                   | International              | Megaptera Marine Conservation   |
| Gill Braulik                    | International              | St. Andrews University, IUCN Cetacean Specialist Group  |
| Giuseppe Notarbartolo di Sciara | International              | CMS   |
| Grant Abel                      | International              | IUCN Cetacean Specialist Group/ICPC   |
| Heidrun Frisch-Nwakanma         | International              | CMS   |
| Howard Rosenbaum                | Senegal                    | WCS   |
| Idrissa Bamy                    | Republic of Guinea         | Centre National des Sciences  |
| Isidore Ayissi                  | Cameroon                   | Institute of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences (ISH) of Yabassi, University of Douala  |
| Javier Almunia                  | International              | Loro Parque Foundation  |
| Joseph Sefah Debrah             | Ghana                      | University of Cape Coast  |
| Judicael Regis Kema Kema        | Gabon                      | National Parks Agency (ANPN)  |

|   |                            |   |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| Lindsay Porter                                    | International              | International Whaling Commission (Small Cetacean Committee)                   |
| Lorenzo Rojas-Bracho                              | International              | International Whaling Commission, Conservation Committee                      |
| Lorenzo von Fersen                                | International              | Nuremberg Zoo   |
| Luc Badji   | Senegal                    | African Aquatic Conservation Fund   |
| Lucy Keith-Diagne                                 | Senegal                    | African Aquatic Conservation Fund   |
| Marguerite Tarzia                                 | International              | International Whaling Commission  |
| Marina Nganguia                                   | Congo Republic (Conkouati) | ASMEFA  |
| Mark Peter Simmonds                               | International              | Humane Society International  |
| Matt Leslie                                       | International              | Swarthmore College  |
| Michael McGowen                                   | International              | Smithsonian Institution   |
| Moulaye Wagne                                     | Mauritania                 | Institut Mauritanien de Recherches Océanographiques et des Pêches (IMROP).    |
| Nick Tregenza                                     | International              | Chelonia Ltd.   |
| Nicola Hodgins                                    | International              | Whale and Dolphin Conservation  |
| Oumar Ba  | Senegal                    | Brid Life International   |
| Peter Corkeron                                    | International              | New England Aquarium  |
| Randall Reeves                                    | International              | IUCN SSC Cetacean Specialist Group  |
| Randall Wells                                     | International              | Sarasota Dolphin Project  |
| Rima Jabado                                       | International              | (CMS) Sharks MoU  |
| Rita Amaral                                       | International              | University of Lisbon, Center for Ecology, Evolution and Environmental Changes |
| Romain Beville                                    | Congo                      | NOE   |
| Ruth Leeney                                       | International              | Independent Researcher  |
| Salvatore Cerchio                                 | International              | African Aquatic Conservation fund   |
| Samuel Turvey                                     | International              | Zoological Society London   |
| Sofie van Parijs                                  | International              | NOAA  |
| Stephanie Plön                                    | International              | Bayworld Centre for Research and Education (BCRE), South Africa               |
| Thomas Jefferson                                  | International              | Viva Vaquita  |
| Tilen Genov                                       | International              | Morigenos   |
| Tim Collins                                       | International              | Wildlife Conservation Society   |
| Vincent Ridoux                                    | International              | La Rochelle University  |
| Yandeh Sallah-Muhammed                            | The Gambia                 | Gambia Marine and Environmental Conservation Initiative                       |
| <b>Additional contacts - CMS Concerted Action</b> |                            |   |
| Gabriel Hoinssoudé Segniabeto                     | Togo                       |   |
| Zacharie Zohou                                    | Benin                      | Institut de Recherches Halieutiques et Océanologiques du Bénin (IRHOB)        |
| Abdul-Rahman Dirisu                               | Nigeria                    |   |
| Severin Tchibozo                                  | Benin                      | Centre de Recherche pour la Gestion de la Biodiversité                        |
| Melanie Virtue                                    | International              | CMS Secretariat   |
| Koen Van Waerebeek                                | International              | Independent Researcher  |

### A3. CCAHD Working Groups and compositions

| Working Group                                  | Convenor                            | Working Group Participants   |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>1</b><br>CMS Concerted Action               | Tim Collins                         | Heidrun Frisch-Nwakanma, Nicola Hodgins, Gianna Minton, Giuseppe Notarbartolo di Sciara, Lindsay Porter, Howard Rosenbaum, Mark Simmonds, Marguerite Tarzia, Ibrahima Ndong, Cedrick Fogwan, Edem Eniang, Lucy Keith-Diagne, Koen Van Waerebeek, Caroline Weir       |
| <b>2</b><br>Outreach and Capacity Building     | Lucy Keith-Diagne and Gianna Minton | Gill Braulik, Sal Cerchio, Tim Collins, Tilen Genov, Nicola Hodgins, Ibrahima Ndong, Cedrick Fogwan, Edem Eniang, Yandeh Sallah-Muhammed, Matt Leslie, Lindsay Porter, Mark Simmonds, Lorenzo von Fersen, Caroline Weir, Gianna Minton, Marguerite Tarzia, Luc Badji |
| <b>3</b><br>Senegal-Gambia surveys             | Caroline Weir                       | Sal Cerchio, Tim Collins, Tilen Genov, Nicola Hodgins, Lucy Keith-Diagne, Regis Kema Kema, Matt Leslie, Ibrahima Ndong, Lindsay Porter, Els Vermeulen, Randy Wells, Gianna Minton  |
| <b>4</b> Genetic diversity                     | Michael McGowen                     | Ana Rita Amaral, Tim Collins, Tilen Genov, Lucy Keith-Diagne, Matt Leslie, Howard Rosenbaum, Caroline Weir, Gianna Minton, Aristide Takoukam   |
| <b>5</b><br>Sampling of strandings and bycatch | Forrest Gomez                       | Tim Collins, Tilen Genov, Lucy Keith-Diagne, Dee Allen, Matt Leslie, Cynthia Smith, Stephanie Ploen, Randy Wells, Caroline Weir, Gianna Minton   |
| <b>6</b><br>Interview surveys in range states  | Gill Braulik                        | Gill Braulik, Sal Cerchio, Tim Collins, Tilen Genov, Nicola Hodgins, Tom Jefferson, Lucy Keith-Diagne, Regis Kema Kema, Lindsay Porter, Marguerite Tarzia, Samuel Turvey, Rima Jabado, Edem Eniang, Ellen Hines, Caroline Weir, Gianna Minton                        |
| <b>7</b><br>Preparation for health assessments | Forrest Gomez                       | Grant Abel, Tim Collins, Tilen Genov, Lucy Keith-Diagne, Matt Leslie, Cynthia Smith, Stephanie Ploen, Dee Allen, Caroline Weir, Randy Wells, Gianna Minton   |
| <b>8</b><br>Acoustic monitoring                | Caroline Weir                       | Sal Cerchio, Tim Collins, Peter Corkeron, Tilen Genov, Lucy Keith-Diagne, Nick Tregenza, Randy Wells, Gianna Minton  |
| <b>9</b><br>Bycatch Mitigation in Congo        | Marguerite Tarzia                   | Tim Collins, Nicola Hodgins, Lindsay Porter, Lorenzo Rojas Bracho, Caroline Weir, Gianna Minton  |
| <b>10</b><br>Threats from coastal development  | Tom Jefferson                       | Tim Collins, Lucy Keith-Diagne, Lindsay Porter, Caroline Weir, Gianna Minton   |
| <b>11</b><br>Establishment of an expert panel  | Tim Collins                         | Nicola Hodgins, Tom Jefferson, Giuseppe Notarbartolo di Sciara, Lindsay Porter, Lorenzo Rojas Bracho, Mark Simmonds, Els Vermeulen, Caroline Weir, Gianna Minton   |
| <b>12</b><br>Fund raising                      | Lorenzo von Fersen                  | Tim Collins, Nicola Hodgins, Lindsay Porter, Marguerite Tarzia, Caroline Weir, Gianna Minton   |

## A4. Working Group 2 Full Report: Outreach and Capacity Building

| Data gaps and conservation management needs   |
|---|
| <p>What is already known/available for your WG Target with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?</p>  |
| <p><b>Working Group Target:</b> Working Group 2 was tasked with the following target identified by Weir et al. (2020):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.2. Outreach/Awareness/Capacity building activities in communities and with local scientists and governments</li> </ul> <p><b>Background</b></p> <p>Outreach, awareness-raising and capacity building focused on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (St) conservation has been limited in the countries where the species occurs. The CMS WAF CET initiative in the late 1990s and early 2000s was the first regional effort that helped to raise local awareness of the species and to involve local scientists in beach, interview, and boat-based survey work (Van Waerebeek et al., 2003a; Van Waerebeek et al., 2003b). This project involved scientists in The Gambia, Senegal, and Guinea-Bissau. Follow-up work involving technical support from Dr. Koen van Waerebeek to local scientists in these countries as well as Togo, Ghana, Nigeria, Cameroon and Guinea has resulted in a wealth of publications on cetacean distribution and conservation status in the region, on which local scientists are either co-authors or first authors (Ofori-Danson et al., 2003; Van Waerebeek et al., 2009; Bamy et al., 2010; Uwagbae and Van Waerebeek, 2010; Ayissi et al., 2014; Segniagbeto et al., 2014; Van Waerebeek et al., 2017).</p> <p>In Senegal, coastal research, accompanied by environmental education and awareness-raising activities is currently being conducted by the African Aquatic Conservation Fund (<a href="#">AACEF</a>), whose activities focus primarily on manatees and turtles and stranded cetaceans. In Cameroon, the African Marine Mammal Conservation Organisation (<a href="#">AMMCO</a>) has also been involved in outreach and education activities, but until recently, also with a focus on manatees. In Gabon cetacean research conducted through the Wildlife Conservation Society (WCS) (Collins et al., 2013) and the Worldwide Fund for Nature (WWF) (Minton et al., 2017) was accompanied by limited outreach and capacity building. WCS collaborated with the national Parks Agency to create a poster that would promote reporting of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> sightings and strandings (see Appendix 1). One scientist involved in WWF-coordinated research between 2012 and 2015 is now working as the warden of six marine and coastal protected areas and working toward a PhD on cetacean conservation. In Congo, dedicated <i>Sousa teuszii</i> research efforts involved the effective recruitment and training of community-based focal points who reported cetacean sightings and strandings, as well as park rangers who were able to systematically collect shore-based sightings data in a manner that allowed assessment of density and relative abundance of the species in the Conkouati Douli National Park (Collins et al., 2013).</p> <p>While these efforts have been extremely valuable, and have facilitated recent reassessments of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> distribution (Weir and Collins, 2015) and conservation status (Collins, 2015; Collins et al., 2017) throughout the species' range, these assessments highlighted significant data gaps. Dedicated research on the species</p> |

has only been conducted in five of the 13 countries where the species is known to occur. In the remaining eight, the species presence is known only from scattered (opportunistic) sighting or stranding records. In six additional countries, there are no records of the species, but in only one of these (Ghana) have there been any dedicated surveys to document cetacean distribution, providing a possible indication that the lack of records may reflect an actual absence of the species rather than a failure to document it (although documented direct takes are also known to occur in Ghana).

The lack of records reflects a low overall level awareness and capacity among the stakeholders in the region involved in for wildlife and coastal research and management. Some coastal communities are not aware that dolphins inhabit their waters, and many are also unaware of legal protections in place for cetaceans. If they are aware, they are unlikely to have any concept that one of the species they observe and potentially catch in their fishing nets, catch or kill, is Critically Endangered. Government agencies in some range states are similarly unaware, and thus are unable to initiate or support any research or conservation efforts for the species. Addressing data gaps, assessing threats to the critically endangered species, and development of effective mitigation and management plans have to start with outreach, awareness raising and capacity building. These efforts need to simultaneously target a variety of St range-state stakeholders, ranging from fishers and coastal communities to coastal and marine protected area staff, to government agencies responsible for fisheries as well as wildlife management and conservation. The sustainability of effective population monitoring and conservation management will also hinge on capacity building at multiple levels, from community members who are trained to log and report sightings and strandings, to local scientists who can lead local conservation based research efforts, to government officials who can prioritise *Sousa teuszii* conservation in policy and planning.

## REFERENCES

- Ayissi, I., G. Hoinsoide, and K. Van Waerebeek. 2014. Rediscovery of Cameroon dolphin, the Gulf of Guinea population of *Sousa teuszii* (Kükenthal, 1892). ISDR Biodiversity 819827:doi.org/10.1155/2014/819827.
- Bamy, I., K. Van Waerebeek, S. Bah, M. Dia, B. Kaba, N. Keita, and S. Konate. 2010. Species occurrence of cetaceans in Guinea, including humpback whales with southern hemisphere seasonality. Marine Biodiversity Records 3:e48.
- Collins, T. 2015. Re-assessment of the Conservation Status of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin, *Sousa teuszii* (Kükenthal, 1892), Using the IUCN Red List Criteria. In: A. J. Thomas and E. C. Barbara, editors, Humpback Dolphins (*Sousa spp.*): Current Status and Conservation, Part 1: Advances in Marine Biology Volume 72. Academic Press. p. 47-77.
- Collins, T., G. T. Braulik, and W. Perrin. 2017. *Sousa teuszii*, The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. e.T20425A50372734. Downloaded on 10 December 2017., <http://www.iucnredlist.org/details/20425/0>.
- Collins, T., S. Strindberg, R. Mboumba, E. Dilambaka, J. Thonio, C. Mouissou, R. Boukaka, G. K. Saffou, L. Buckland, R. H. Leeney, R. Antunes, and H. Rosenbaum. 2013. Progress on Atlantic humpback dolphin conservation and research efforts in Congo and Gabon. Document presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission SC/65a/SM16 Rev:24.

Minton, G., J. R. Kema Kema, A. Todd, L. Korte, P. B. Maganga, J. R. Migoungui Mouelet, A. M. Nguema, E. Moussavou, and G. K. Nguélé. 2017. Multi-stakeholder collaboration yields valuable data for cetacean conservation in Gamba, Gabon. *African Journal of Marine Science* 39(4):423-433. doi: 10.2989/1814232X.2017.1398106

Ofori-Danson, P. K., K. Van Waerebeek, and S. Debrah. 2003. A survey for the conservation of dolphins in Ghanaian coastal waters. *Journal of the Ghana Science Association* 5:45-54.

Segniagbeto, G. H., K. Van Waerebeek, J. E. Bowessidjaou, K. Ketoh, T. K. Kpatcha, K. Okoumassou, and K. Ahoedo. 2014. Annotated checklist and fisheries interactions of cetaceans in Togo, with evidence of Antarctic minke whale in the Gulf of Guinea. *Integrative Zoology* 9(1):1-13. doi: 10.1111/1749-4877.12011

Uwagbae, M., and K. Van Waerebeek. 2010. Initial evidence of dolphin takes in the Niger Delta region and a review of Nigerian cetaceans. SC/62/SM1, International Whaling Commission.

Van Waerebeek, K., L. Barnett, A. Camara, A. Cham, M. Diallo, A. Djiba, A. Jallow, E. Ndiave, A. O. Ould-Bilal, and I. L. Bamy. 2003a. Conservation of cetaceans in the Gambia and Senegal, 1999-2001, and status of the Atlantic humpback dolphin. WAF CET - 2 Report.

Van Waerebeek, K., E. Ndiaye, A. Djiba, D. Mamadou, P. Murphy, A. Jallow, A. Camara, P. Ndiaye, and P. Tous. 2003b. A Survey of the Conservation Status of Cetaceans in Senegal, the Gambia and Guinea-Bissau, WAF CET - I Report, UNEP/CMS. Bonn, Germany.

Van Waerebeek, K., P. K. Ofori-Danson, and J. Debrah. 2009. The cetaceans of Ghana, a validated faunal checklist. *West African Journal of Applied Ecology* 15:61-90.

Van Waerebeek, K., M. Uwagbae, G. H. Segniagbeto, I. L. Bamy, and I. Ayissi. 2017. New records of Atlantic humpback dolphin in Guinea, Nigeria, Cameroon and Togo underscore fisheries pressure and generalised marine bushmeat demand. *Revue d'Ecologie (Terre et Vie)* 72:192-205.

Weir, C. R., and T. Collins. 2015. A Review of the Geographical Distribution and Habitat of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*). In: T. A. Jefferson and B. C. Curry, editors, *Advances in Marine Biology Volume 72. Humpback Dolphins (Sousa spp.): Current Status and Conservation, Part 1*. Academic Press. p. 79-117.

Weir, C., R. H. Leeney, and T. Collins. 2020. Reinvigorating conservation efforts for the Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*): A brief progress report. Document presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission SC/68B/SM/07:1-20.

### Identifying priority conservation management data gaps

**Working Group 2** used a shared Google Sheet to rank the priority resource and data gaps that could be addressed through outreach and capacity building activities, and then to rank and assess the suggested activities that could be conducted to address these gaps. This was done separately for Outreach and Awareness raising gaps and activities and for Capacity building gaps and activities.



| OUTREACH AND AWARENESS RAISING |  |  |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Priority rank                  | Identified data/resource gap   | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i>  |
| 1                              | Lack of awareness of St conservation status and threats among coastal communities, including school children and fishers                                     | If fishers and coastal communities become aware of both the rarity and protected status of St, they may take more precautions to avoid entanglement and to report sightings and strandings when they occur. This will help to address data gaps, and potentially mitigate threats (although realistically they may not feel able to change their fishing practices unless we come up with viable alternatives and economic incentives or compensations – so these solutions will need to follow awareness-raising if any real change is to occur). |
| 2                              | Lack of awareness of St conservation status and threats among government agencies / managers responsible for marine / coastal conservation                   | Government agencies cannot be expected to take <i>Sousa teuszii</i> into account when approving coastal development plans, creating and maintaining protected areas, designing fisheries policy, or conducting any other kind of coastal zone management activities if they are not aware of the species' distribution and conservation status. They may allow activities to occur that are detrimental to the species' continued survival and contravene existing protective legislation.   |
| 3                              | Lack of effective reporting networks for live sightings or strandings  | Increased reports of live sightings and strandings will help to fill data gaps on the species' distribution and causes of death (in the case of strandings).   |
| 4                              | Lack of understanding of the specific threats that need to be mitigated (and thus what awareness/education activities could effectively support mitigation). | Understanding the threats that are causing mortality and population declines is essential to designing materials and tools to help reduce those threats, although this also falls under other CCAHD working groups.  |
| CAPACITY BUILDING              |  |  |
| 1                              | Need for government managers with knowledge of tools that can be used to effectively protect St and mitigate threats   | Once aware of the perilous conservation status of St, government agencies need to understand and have available tools that can be used to reduce threats and protect populations.  |
| 2a*                            | Need for focal points to coordinate national or state/province-level sighting and reporting networks   | Effective reporting networks will lead to better understanding of the species' current distribution and threats, but these networks require focal points with the  |

|  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
|  |   | tools and understanding to collect/solicit, collate and share data.  |
| <b>2b*</b>   | Need for more scientists in St range states with experience in different elements of St conservation-based research | Scientists from outside the region can help to collect data and train locals, but only local scientists will be able to effectively and sustainably monitor populations over time and ensure that government agencies are actively engaged in long-term protection and management. |
| *Note that these two gaps were considered of equal priority to address |   |  |

| OUTREACH AND AWARENESS RAISING   |   |
|--|---|
| Data/resource gap - Priority rank 1: Lack of awareness of St conservation status and threats among coastal communities including school children and fishers   |   |
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap and assess their achievability and likely constraints (Colour coding indicates WG 2s ranking of the activities' priority and feasibility as a <b>high</b> priority/short term activity (within the next 2 year), a <b>medium</b> priority/medium term activity (2-3 years), or a <b>longer term/lower</b> priority.) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Conduct community based workshops</b>, townhalls or meetings/workshops: This was considered achievable in the countries where we have identified partners that engage in this type of work for other species or for marine and coastal environments generally (e.g. Senegal, Cameroon, The Gambia and Gabon). Funding is needed to support the local partners that would conduct these workshops to cover their time, per diems of attendees, meeting venues, refreshments and materials.</li> <li>• <b>Design and distribute posters</b> (emphasizing uniqueness of species and value of reporting strandings, bycatch and live sightings): This was considered feasible, especially if posters are designed in a way that they can be printed and posted, and/or shared via social media/apps. They would need to be available in English, French and Portuguese at a minimum, and should be produced in a way that they could be translated into other local languages as well.</li> <li>• <b>Lesson plans</b> on dolphin biology, marine coastal ecology, threats and conservation: These were determined to be feasible, and <a href="#">examples</a> of materials produced for other cetacean species in other languages are available for adaptation/translation. Funding would be required to engage a curriculum developer/artist/educator with the experience necessary to ensure that the adapted materials are appropriate culturally as well as being accurate for the species. Materials should be available in French, English, Portuguese and 'Pidgin'.</li> <li>• <b>T-shirts, bags, caps etc.</b> with St conservation messages printed on them. These may be effective to reinforce conservation measures and raise awareness, and could be handed out as prizes or gifts during community workshops. Bags that could replace single-use plastics would also reinforce sustainable practices and reduce marine litter. However, these were deemed less of a priority than other activities.</li> </ul> |

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Story books, colouring books, etc.:</b> These were deemed slightly lower priority than lesson plans, although they could feed into lesson plan content as well.</li> <li>• Development and maintenance of the <b>CCAHD Website</b> to help make outreach tools available to a wide audience. This is highly feasible, as the website is already under construction and will include a section for downloadable resources. However, it is noted that coastal communities and fishers are unlikely to access websites regularly themselves, so this may be a resource that is used more often by the NGOs, teachers, trainers and other stakeholders who organize workshops and educational outreach activities.</li> <li>• <b>Social Media campaign</b> (supported by catchy slogans, posters etc.): A social media campaign could use the posters, infographics and other outreach tools that are developed for the CCAHD, but would require better preparation, and engagement of a wider range of stakeholders to be successful. This was viewed as a medium-term strategy that can be implemented once networks are better established in the targeted range states.</li> <li>• Use of <b>local/national celebrities</b> to promote St conservation messages: This could support a social media campaign – and use other media channels as well, and will be most effective once local networks and government stakeholders have been consolidated and are ready to engage.</li> <li>• <b>Music videos</b> were deemed effective as a means to raise awareness in coastal communities in Madagascar. How these are received from one community in St range states to another may vary, as may the target languages – so these may be more difficult to develop in a way that they can be applied throughout the range, but could be considered as a longer-term objective to support other activities in certain communities.</li> </ul> |
| <p>With regard to the activities (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(i) See consolidated budget estimates below.</p> <p>(ii) These actions require human resources rather than equipment. They require time for organisation and facilitation of community workshops and other outreach efforts. <u>Examples</u> of posters, educational materials etc. that have been used for other species in other locations are available, but funding is needed to contract qualified individuals who can adapt these materials for use in coastal communities in St range states.</p> <p>(iii) AACF has offered to assist with the ad hoc French translation of emails and documents to send out to range state partners, organisation of community workshops in the Saloum Delta, Senegal, as well as dissemination of outreach materials to coastal communities there. WDC, IWC and WCS have made examples of materials available and may be able to help with their adaptation.</p>  |
| <b>OUTREACH AND AWARENESS RAISING</b>  |   |
| <b>Data/resource gap - Priority rank 2: Lack of awareness of St conservation status and threats among government agencies/managers responsible for marine/coastal conservation</b>   |   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap and assess their achievability and likely constraints (Colour coding indicates WG 2s ranking of the activities' priority and feasibility as a <b>high priority/short term activity</b>, a <b>medium priority/medium term activity</b>, or a <b>longer term/lower priority</b>.)</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Design a <b>(map-based) infographic</b> conveying <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range, knowledge gaps and threats</li> <li>• Design <b>power point presentations</b> - in relevant languages for range states.</li> <li>• <b>Engagement by in-country CCAHD members - in person meetings:</b> Local NGO partners and scientists may be best placed to engage their relevant government agencies. They can use the power point presentation and infographics developed to support their engagement.</li> <li>• Development and maintenance of the <b>CCAHD website</b> so that it is an effective resource for local government stakeholders.</li> <li>• Provide <b>training at academies for park rangers and fisheries agencies</b> to include a unit/presentation on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> conservation status and threats. This could be an adaptation of the power point presentation above.</li> <li>• <b>Engagement from IGOs (CMS, IWC, etc)</b> to invite relevant government agencies in each range state to conservation planning discussions.</li> </ul> |
| <p>With regard to the activities (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p>   | <p>(i) See compiled rough cost estimates below</p> <p>(ii) These actions require human resources rather than equipment. They require time for organisation and facilitation of engagements with relevant government agencies and other outreach efforts. Funding is needed to contract qualified individuals who can design and translate an infographic. Coordination time may be needed to help CCAHD members contribute to the design of an effective power point presentation and/or video that can be used to engage government stakeholders.</p> <p>(iii) AACF has offered to assist with the design of presentations and ad hoc French translation of emails and documents to send out to range state partners as well as outreach to government agencies, as have a number of other CCAHD members in St range states. However, their time should be reimbursed.</p>  |

| OUTREACH AND AWARENESS RAISING  |  |
|---|--|
| Data/resource gap - Priority rank 3: Lack of effective reporting networks for live sightings or strandings  |  |
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap and assess their achievability and likely constraints (Colour coding indicates WG 2s ranking of the activities' priority and</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Designate national and/or province-state-level <b>focal points for data collection</b>, and establish national or province/state-level <b>reporting networks</b> - WhatsApp groups etc. The logistics and costs for this will vary from country to country. Cameroon and Senegal, for example, already have effective reporting networks in place that were initially driven by Manatee conservation work, but now include greater focus on cetaceans. In other countries, more support may be needed to identify focal points and ensure they have the tools and support they need to elicit, collate, and effectively archive records.</li> </ul> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>feasibility as a <b>high priority/short term activity, a medium priority/medium term activity, or a longer term/lower priority.</b>)</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Posters and online content</b> to promote reporting of sightings and strandings with hotlines or details on how to report</li> <li>• Create step-by step <b>manuals and/or videos demonstrating how to collect basic data</b> and samples from strandings (also translated into target languages)</li> <li>• Work with national parks agencies/authorities to ensure that <b>rangers in coastal/marine parks</b> are alerted to the value of reporting strandings and/or live sightings during patrols - <a href="#">SMART</a> could facilitate this. This could be combined with training for park rangers and fisheries agencies (see above and below).</li> <li>• <b>Expand and adapt the use of reporting Apps</b> -(e.g. Siren -developed in Cameroon, and available for adaptation and use in other range states: <a href="https://www.ammco.org/telecharger_siren">https://www.ammco.org/telecharger_siren</a>, Seafari - <a href="http://www.seafariapp.org/">http://www.seafariapp.org/</a>). This was considered valuable, but as a second step after data focal points have been identified in each country, as records must be sent to local partners who can collate and work with reports as they come in.</li> <li>• <b>Online virtual 'webinars' or seminars</b> for potential reporting network members or leaders, containing basic information on St status, threats, and how to recognise the species, report sightings, report strandings, and collect samples. These could be facilitated by local NGOs or scientists, who could invite their members or contacts to participate.</li> <li>• Development and maintenance of the <b>CCAHD Website</b> to help make ID guides and reporting tools available to a wide audience, and to facilitate reports if reporting individuals find the website but not their country focal point. The website will have an interactive map that takes users to full country profiles for each range state that will include contact details for country focal points and a contact form.</li> </ul> |
| <p>With regard to the activities (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(i) See rough compiled budget below.</p> <p>(ii) These actions require human resources and the development of communication tools rather than equipment.</p> <p>(iii) <b>Co-funding or donations in kind</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uko Gorter has already offered to design an A4 marine mammals of West Africa ID card free of cost using his species illustrations. This is a donation worth several thousand USD. Species Factsheets have also been provided by the International Whaling Commission.</li> <li>• Gill Braulik has offered the use of the cetacean ID cards produced for the IOTC for the species that occur in both the Indian Ocean and W Africa, and help to design additional cards for those species not occurring in the Indian Ocean. These can support Interviews, Capacity building and awareness raising.</li> <li>• Seafari and Siren apps are free to download and the information would be sent to country focal points free of charge</li> </ul>   |

| Capacity Building  |   |
|--|---|
| Data/resource gap - Priority rank 1: Need for government managers with knowledge of tools that can be used to effectively protect St and mitigate threats  |   |
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap and assess their achievability and likely constraints (Colour coding indicates WG 2s ranking of the activities' priority and feasibility as a <b>high priority/short term activity</b>, a <b>medium priority/medium term activity</b>, or a <b>longer term/lower priority</b>.)</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identify relevant individuals or gov't bodies in each St range state who could/should be implicated in St conservation management (use NGO, IGO, and fisheries contacts/networks to identify).<br/><i>Cost estimate: Hopefully this can be achieved with support from CMS, IWC and IUCN and CCAHD partners without extra cost. Perhaps it does require some staff time for a CCAHD coordinator and/or range-state partners?</i></li> <li><b>Engagement by in-country CCAHD members - in person meetings:</b> Local NGO partners and scientists may be best placed to engage their relevant government agencies. They can use the power point presentation and infographics developed to support their engagement.</li> <li>Provide <b>training at academies for park rangers and fisheries agencies</b>. These individuals are likely to become the conservation managers of the future.</li> <li>Development and maintenance of the <b>CCAHD website</b> so that it is an effective resource for local government stakeholders, featuring a searchable database of scientific literature, infographics, and accessible information about the species and the threats it faces. This will include the CMS Concerted Action and past CMS and IWC reports on the species and conservation planning tools like: <a href="https://www.iucn.org/content/guidelines-species-conservation-planning-version-10">https://www.iucn.org/content/guidelines-species-conservation-planning-version-10</a>.</li> <li><b>Engagement from IGOs (CMS, IWC, etc)</b> to invite relevant government agencies in each range state to conservation planning discussions. <i>Cost estimate: Hopefully IGO representatives would be able to contribute their time at no extra cost. Staff/coordination time would be required to arrange meetings and ensure all the relevant partners are involved, and supporting presentations/materials are available.</i></li> </ul> |
| <p>With regard to the activities (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations</p>  | <p>(i) See rough cost estimates in the compiled budget below.</p> <p>(ii) These actions require human resources rather than equipment.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any <b>co-funding or donations in kind</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An IUCN SSC EDGE grant of 9,100 USD has been obtained to support engagement of relevant government agencies in a number of AHD range states. This will help to cover the costs of designing an infographic as well as some staff time for range-state partners who will be responsible for these engagements. CCAHD members affiliated with the CMS, IWC, IUCN and SMM have offered to help with the identification of relevant government agencies/contacts.</li> </ul>  |



|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| that could support this activity |  |
|----------------------------------|--|

| Capacity Building  |  |
|--|--|
| Data/resource gap - Priority rank 2a: Need for focal points to coordinate national or state/province-level sighting and reporting networks   |  |
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap and assess their achievability and likely constraints (Colour coding indicates WG 2s ranking of the activities' priority and feasibility as a <b>high priority/short term activity, a medium priority/medium term activity, or a longer term/lower priority.</b> ) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide <b>training and support</b> for individuals who agree to <b>coordinate sightings or strandings networks</b>. This could take place through virtual webinars, 1-1 virtual training from a CCAHD member, or regional support networks through which other scientists/focal points from the region share tips and tools for effective reporting networks.<br/><i>Cost estimate:</i></li> <li>• <b>Posters and online content</b> to promote reporting of sightings and strandings with hotlines or details on how to report sightings and strandings.</li> <li>• <b>Create step-by step manuals and/or videos</b> demonstrating how to collect basic data and samples from strandings (also translated into target languages)</li> <li>• Development and maintenance of the <b>CCAHD Website</b> to help make ID guides and reporting tools available to a wide audience, and to facilitate reports if reporting individuals find the website but not their country focal point. The website will have an interactive map that takes users to full country profiles for each range state that will include contact details for country focal points and a contact form.</li> </ul> |
| With regard to the activities (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:<br><br>(i) likely budget requirement<br><br>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;<br><br>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity  | <p>(i) See compiled budget estimate below.</p> <p>(ii) These actions require human resources rather than equipment: coordination/planning and leading meetings/virtual training, venue rental, creation of training videos, poster printing, follow up guidance for trainees, and website maintenance.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any <b>co-funding or donations in kind</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Uko Gorter</a> has offered to design an A4 marine mammals of West Africa ID card free of cost using his species illustrations. The card will have space for national / local stranding coordinator contact information.</li> <li>• <a href="#">AACF</a> can provide logistics for training workshops in Senegal. AACF is already the lead for reporting sightings and strandings in Senegal, and can take the lead in outreach workshops &amp; training for govt staff, rangers, etc. which would also be included with training provided for manatees and sea turtles. We will video necropsy procedures next time we have a carcass in Senegal (standard measurements &amp; photo views, tooth counts, sample collection, etc.) so that it can be used for training purposes.</li> </ul>  |

| Capacity Building |
|-------------------|
|-------------------|

| Data/resource gap - Priority rank 2b: Need for more scientists in St range states with experience in different elements of St conservation-based research  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap and assess their achievability and likely constraints (Colour coding indicates WG 2s ranking of the activities' priority and feasibility as a <b>high priority/short term activity</b>, a <b>medium priority/medium term activity</b>, or a <b>longer term/lower priority</b>.)</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Identify local scientists in each St range state who have worked with, or would be willing to collect data on St.</b> This process has already started, but needs to continue with help of CCAHD members, NGO, IGO, and fisheries contacts/networks.<br/><i>Cost estimates: There may not be any costs associated with this activity, other than the time of a coordinator to help keep track of outreach efforts and identified scientists in each range state.</i></li> <li>• <b>Identify universities and labs</b> where students and scientists could use facilities. AACF already works closely with Cheikh Anta Diop University (UCAD) in Senegal, and some of the CCAHD range state members are associated with universities themselves. Further outreach and discussions are required to determine whether these universities could help to identify students interested in marine mammal research, whether they could support students in this field, and whether they have labs where necropsies could be conducted, veterinary pathologists who could assist with necropsies, or other lab facilities where samples could be analysed (blood, tissue, genetics, etc).<br/><i>Cost estimates: There may not be any costs associated with this activity, other than the time of local range state partners and a coordinator to help keep track of outreach efforts and identified scientists in each range state.</i></li> <li>• Where helpful, <b>provide support and hands-on training in the field</b> from external/international CCAHD scientists in different subject areas (genetics, health, distribution, abundance estimation, acoustics, etc.). This could take place through dedicated regional training workshops where trainee scientists are invited from different range states to participate in hands-on training, or by <b>Including young/developing scientists in fieldwork</b> - ranging from beach surveys to dedicated surveys for distribution, abundance, acoustics, etc.</li> <li>• Build <b>regional network</b> of scientists who can communicate informally and support each other. Scientists from <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range states who share the same working language, whether experienced or less experienced, may feel more at ease communicating with and supporting each other through a WhatsApp or email group.<br/><i>Cost estimate. This may not have any costs associated with it, but would require one or two individuals to offer to set up and support the group.</i></li> <li>• Develop a <b>buddy/mentor scheme</b> where a more experienced cetacean scientist either from the region or from outside the region conducts local fieldwork with a young developing scientist, or a scientists crossing over to cetacean work from another field, and then remains in close contact with that scientist through email, skype etc. to provide them regular support and encouragement.<br/><i>Cost estimate. This might already be in place informally for some local scientists, and may require in person collaboration to initiate. It may be a natural follow on from a dedicated training workshop.</i></li> </ul> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ask university lecturers/scientists from CCAHD and beyond to offer in person or remote/<b>virtual university lectures</b> that could contribute to marine mammal courses in universities in St range states.</li> <li>• Development and maintenance of the <b>CCAHD Website</b> to support local scientists who are looking for scientific literature, research protocols or other resources to support their studies and research.</li> </ul>  |
| <p>With regard to the activities (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(i) See rough cost estimates in compiled budget below.</p> <p>(ii) These actions require human resources rather than equipment: People to identify local scientists in range states, to mentor and train, website maintenance.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any <b>co-funding or donations in kind</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">AACF</a> can provide logistics for training workshops in Senegal, can help lead a local network of scientists in informal conversations (What's App, etc.), and liaise with UCAD in Dakar to recruit students and build local veterinary expertise.</li> <li>• <a href="#">Morigenos</a> offers to host scientists from range states for fieldwork in Slovenia so that they can gain practical expertise with photo-ID and other field techniques, as well as data processing and analysis. Tilen also offers to assist with fieldwork and/or training of local scientists on site in <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range states. He can offer his time free of cost if his travel and accommodation can be covered. Relevant core skills include photo-ID, boat surveys, biopsy sampling, mark-recapture abundance estimates, line-transect sampling, social network analysis, statistical and spatial modelling.</li> <li>• <a href="#">Ketos Ecology</a> offers to help with producing reporting and training materials, and with training people in the field potentially (though the latter would unfortunately have to be in English and I know it is better in French in most countries).</li> </ul> |

### Consolidated rough budget estimates for outreach and capacity building activities:

Items listed here are those that were determined to be of the highest level of feasibility and priority by working group members. Those in orange were deemed slightly lower priority. Proposed activities could be implemented in multiple countries at the same time. For the sake of this estimation exercise, we have generally used 3 languages and 5 countries as our 'base case' for estimated costs over the next two years. However, this can obviously be adjusted depending on the funding opportunities that we are pursuing, and when we design funding proposals, we will consult more closely with partners on the ground to more accurately estimate costs for each proposed activity.

| Item   | Category          | Target group(s)                                  | Description of costs   | cost per unit (USD) | Number of units/countries | Total estimated | Potential matching funds or in-kind donations       |
|--|-------------------|--|--|---------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|---|
| Community based workshops  | Awareness-raising | coastal communities, fishers                     | meeting venue, refreshments, staff costs for coordination and organisation (does not include cost of posters or other materials to share with participants - see below)  | \$1,500.00          | 5                         | \$7,500.00      | AACF has offered to assist with community workshops |
| Posters emphasizing uniqueness of species, and value of reporting strandings, bycatch and live sightings   | Awareness-raising | coastal communities, fishers                     | Professional design of posters that can be disseminated in electronic format via social media. Printing of posters for display in prominent place in coastal communities, fish landing sites, etc Translation into target languages.             | \$5,000.00          | 1                         | \$5,000.00      |   |
| Design of lesson plans for schools on dolphin biology, marine and coastal ecology, threats and conservation                                      | Awareness-raising | Coastal communities and school children          | Adaptation of materials for other species in other countries to appropriate cultural context , as well as translation into main target languages (French/Portuguese/English) and tribal languages  | \$2,000.00          | 3                         | \$6,000.00      |   |
| Design and production of re-usable carrier bags, (children's) T-shirts, exercise books, caps etc with St conservation messages and illustrations | Awareness-raising | Coastal communities, fishers and school children | For each target country/location, design and production of most environmentally friendly and likely to be used/worn set of items. Design likely to be free, but production costs need to be covered  | \$2,000.00          | 5                         | \$10,000.00     | AACF has offered to help with French translations.  |
| Commission story books, colouring books or other materials to introduce St and St conservation needs to children                                 | Awareness-raising | Coastal communities and school children          | Costs of illustrators and authors (Cost estimate: 6,500 USD for the illustration and of a 20-page story book by a professional children's illustrator: <a href="https://howardgrayillustrations.com/">https://howardgrayillustrations.com/</a> ) | \$6,500.00          | 1                         | \$6,500.00      |   |

|   |                                      |  |  |            |   |             |   |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|--|------------|---|-------------|---|
|   |                                      |  | Additional costs for printing and translation  | \$3,000.00 | 5 | \$15,000.00 | Could be opportunity for sponsors to print and feature their logos?                 |
| Development and maintenance of the CCAHD Website  | Awareness raising, capacity building | Coastal communities, educators, NGOs, scientists, government agencies responsible for management | Domain and hosting costs, professional website design, drafting and collecting of content, uploading of content,   | \$5,000.00 | 1 |             | Funded by Friends of Nuremberg Zoo in 2020 - domain and hosting covered for 5 years |
|   |                                      |  | and ongoing maintenance and updates  | \$500.00   | 5 | \$2,500.00  | minimal time required for someone to update and add new material                    |
| Social Media campaign using catchy slogans, posters and information on how to report sightings or strandings Could use local/national celebrities to help promote | awareness raising                    | Coastal communities, fishers and school children   | Could require support from PR firms, filming or advertising agencies - difficult to estimate   |            |   |             |   |
| Design a (map-based) infographic conveying St range, knowledge gaps and threats   | awareness raising                    | Government and Industry stakeholders   | Costs of professional design and layout, plus translation into English/French/Portuguese   | \$3,000.00 | 1 | \$3,000.00  |   |
| Design power point presentations to engage government stakeholders  | awareness raising, capacity building | Government and Industry stakeholders   | design of power point and translation into target languages and addition of site/country specific content  | \$1,000.00 | 5 | \$5,000.00  | Translations could be provided by CCAHD members                                     |
| Local NGOs/st range state partners to engage government partners in in-person meetings where possible to lay groundwork   | awareness raising, capacity building | government stakeholders  | Logistics to set up a meeting, make the right contacts, send invitations (important in most African countries), venue & chair rental, coffee break & lunch (expected in Senegal, Cameroon & probably other countries), printed materials, etc. | \$2,000.00 | 5 | \$10,000.00 |   |

|  |   |  |  |            |   |             |   |
|--|---|--|--|------------|---|-------------|---|
|  |   |  | For manatee meetings we also give out t-shirts & posters   |            |   |             |   |
| Provide training at academies for park rangers and fisheries agencies to include a unit/presentation on Sousa teuszii conservation status and threats. | awareness raising and capacity building | government stakeholders  | Costs of adapting presentations for other stakeholders to this target group and language, local trainers to attend classroom sessions or external trainers to join remotely        | \$1,000.00 | 5 | \$5,000.00  |   |
| IGOs (CMS, IWC, etc. ) to engage their range state focal points in conservation panning  | awareness raising and capacity building | government stakeholders  | per diems for government participants? Costs will vary depending on whether virtual or in-person meetings  | \$2,000.00 | 3 | \$6,000.00  | IGOs to fund the costs of their preparation and attendance. IUCN SSC EDGE grant of 9,100 USD available to support this effort in 2021                         |
| Designate national focal pints for data collection and establish reporting networks  | awareness raising and capacity building | Coastal communities, educators, NGOs, scientists, government agencies responsible for management | Costs of identifying, training and supporting focal points, providing focal points, and possibly village/fishery based informants with phone credit or incentives to share reports | \$5,000.00 | 5 | \$25,000.00 |   |
|  |   |  | Consider use of reporting apps to support networks   |            |   |             | Costs unknown. Would need to ensure that in each country reports from apps are sent to the appropriate country focal point to ensure timely response.         |
| Design of ID cards and species fact sheets to support those collecting sighting or stranding data  | awareness raising and capacity building | Coastal communities, educators, NGOs, scientists, government                                     | Costs of professional illustrations, photos, layout and design   |            |   |             | Uko Gorter has already offered to design an A4 marine mammals of West Africa ID card free of cost using his species illustrations. Gianna Minton has designed |



|   |                   |                                       |   |             |    |              |  |
|---|-------------------|---------------------------------------|---|-------------|----|--------------|--|
|   |                   | agencies responsible for management   |   |             |    |              | an A4 factsheet on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> . These will be translated and distributed in electronic format through the website for free |
| Create step-by step manuals and/or videos demonstrating how to collect basic data and samples from strandings (also translated into target languages)       | Capacity building | scientists, government stakeholders   | cost of designing or adapting basic ppt file that can also be saved as PDF. Consider including hyperlinks to video files that demonstrate sample collection and basic necropsy/assessment of cause of mortality. Cost of translation.   | \$7,000.00  | 1  | \$7,000.00   |  |
| Online virtual webinars for potential reporting network members or leaders  | Capacity building | coastal communities, NGOs, scientists | Costs of time for local partners to coordinate participants, and time for CCAHD members to tailor ppt presentation and present/ participate in seminar  | \$1,500.00  | 5  | \$7,500.00   |  |
| Organise hands-on field based training workshop to demonstrate boat survey techniques for documenting distribution, photo-identification, and/or interviews | Capacity building | Scientists                            | Cost estimate: A dedicated workshop, in Senegal, for example, would probably cost 10,000-20,000 USD if it were to include travel and accommodation costs for scientists from outside Senegal, equipment and boat rental fees, time for course coordinators, and meals and other consumables for all involved. | \$10,000.00 | 1  | \$10,000.00  | AACF could help to coordinate and host this kind of training workshop if funding were available                                      |
| Online/virtual lectures by CCAHD scientists for universities in St range states   | Capacity building | Scientists                            | CCAHD scientists from outside the region would likely offer their time at no cost, but range state University staff may need support for time to set up the correct technology and admin support (e.g. 100 USD per day of prep and lecture time)  | \$100.00    | 20 | \$2,000.00   |  |
|   |                   |                                       |   |             |    |              |  |
| Total   |                   |                                       |   |             |    | \$133,000.00 |  |

## A5. Working Group 3 Full report: Field surveys in Senegal Gambia and Beyond

### Background

What is already known/available for your WG Target with regard to *Sousa teuszii* (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?

**Working Group Targets:** WG3 is one of several WGs that are focused on data collection aimed at addressing Target Area 2 “Fill Knowledge Gaps” (Weir and Collins 2020). Specifically, WG3 aims to discuss and identify priorities for realizing the following two Targets:

- 2.1 Conduct an abundance-distribution survey of the Senegal-Gambia population; and
- 2.2 Extend the Senegal-Gambia approach to other key range states

#### Sousa teuszii survey work

The majority of available information on the occurrence and distribution of *Sousa teuszii* in most of its range states is based on anecdotal sightings, strandings, or bycatch reports (Van Waerebeek et al. 2004). While some opportunistic information has been used to generate subjective estimates of population size (e.g. (Maigret 1980)), little systematic or effort-related work needed to support scientific population assessments has been carried out to date. A brief summary of effort-related surveys carried out over the last two decades includes (by range state, north to south):

- **Senegal:** A targeted study of *S. teuszii* in the Saloum Delta was carried out in October and November 2015, comprising 1,618 km of boat-based survey coverage and producing 30 associated sightings (Weir 2016). Overall encounter rates were 0.018 sightings/km and 0.175 animals/km (Weir 2016).
- **Guinea:** A total of 817.6 km of boat-based effort was carried out in mangrove creeks, estuaries and open marine habitat around the Río Nuñez during October and November 2013 (Weir 2015). Six on-effort sightings of *S. teuszii* were recorded, generating a sighting rate of 0.006 sightings/km. Photo-identification work documented 47 animals.
- **Guinea-Bissau:** Effort-related boat surveys have been carried out in the Rio Gêba and Arquipélago dos Bijagós areas of Guinea-Bissau, comprising several days between 18 February and 29 April 2008 and a single day on 3 November 2012 (Fulling et al. 2008, Leeney et al. 2016). Those surveys produced six sightings of *S. teuszii*, but details of the survey effort are lacking and hinder interpretation.
- **Cameroon:** In 2011, 259.1 km of small boat survey effort in Cameroon resulted in a single *S. teuszii* observation and a sighting rate of 0.039 animals/km (Ayissi et al. 2014). Additionally, 30.5 km of shore-based surveys produced no sightings.

- **Gabon:** 38 days of dedicated small boat surveys were carried out along the coast of Gabon between 2003 and 2006, focussed on areas considered likely to be favourable for *S. teuszii* (Collins et al. 2010). The surveys resulted in six sightings, and annual sighting rates of 0.0013 to 0.0015 sightings/km. Beach patrol surveys using standardised methods were carried out in Mayumba National Park in Gabon during 2007, in an attempt to adapt the shore-based methodology described by Karczmarski et al. (2000): no sightings were recorded. A total of 22 days of boat survey effort off Gamba between 2013 and 2015 resulted in nearly 2,500 km of survey effort and produced three *S. teuszii* sightings (Minton et al. 2017).
- **Republic of Congo:** Beach patrol surveys using standardised methods were conducted on a monthly basis in Conkouati-Douli National Park (CDNP) in Congo during 2009, resulting in 38 sightings of *S. teuszii* (Collins et al. 2010). Beach surveys in the CDNP between 2009 and 2014 yielded 29 associated on-effort sightings of humpback dolphins, facilitating initial assessments of population size in 2011-2014 of between 41 and 85 dolphins; however, the confidence intervals around these estimates were very wide (Collins et al., 2013, 2015).
- **Angola:** Small boat and shore surveys were carried out at Flamingos in southern Angola during January 2008 and June/July 2008, resulting in 1,626.8 km of effort, 52 associated *S. teuszii* sightings, and a combined season sighting rate of 0.038 sightings/km (Weir 2009). Photo-identification revealed the same nine individuals in both seasons (and a calf born in between the seasons), supporting high site fidelity and a small local population.

Most of these effort-related surveys are notable in having had short temporal timeframes (most occurred within single years, some were only ‘snapshots’ spanning a few weeks) and consisting of relatively small amounts of total effort. Additionally, the methods used have not been sufficiently robust to assess population sizes or trends.

### **Assessment of data gaps**

WG3 is one of several WGs that are focused on data collection aimed at addressing Target Area 2 “*Fill Knowledge Gaps*” (Weir and Collins 2020). Specifically, WG3 aims to discuss and identify priorities for realizing the following two Targets:

*2.3 Conduct an abundance-distribution survey of the Senegal-Gambia population; and*

*2.4 Extend the Senegal-Gambia approach to other key range states*

Targets 2.1 and 2.2 were identified by Weir and Collins (2020) in recognition of the range-wide lack of population assessment data for *S. teuszii*, particularly:

1. The total absence of robust information on the global and national population sizes, which hinders understanding of species status and the scale of impacts from threats;
2. Lack of robust data on population trends for any range state, despite widespread concern about potential declines; and
3. Absence of systematic (effort-related) distribution data in almost all range states, with associated paucity of knowledge regarding habitat use and seasonal variation in distribution.

Conducting population assessments to address these core conservation-management data gaps is the focus of WG3. Targets 2.1 and 2.2 were identified by Weir and Collins (2020) as achievable short-medium term (i.e. <2 years) goals. The focus of Target 2.1 on the Senegal-Gambia region was in acknowledgement of: (1) the presence of a reasonably large contemporary population of *S. teuszii* in that region; (2) the occurrence of the species in a relatively pristine habitat in the Saloum Delta; (3) relatively good infrastructure in Senegal and the presence of an established local partner (the African Aquatic Conservation Fund, AACF) that could facilitate survey efforts; and (4) a relatively recent targeted survey in that region (Oct/Nov 2015: Weir, 2016) which demonstrated the feasibility of future surveys. These combined factors make the Senegal-Gambia population a good starting point for a species population assessment, with optimal achievability and providing high conservation value with regard to securing this important population and its habitat over the longer-term. Additionally, this is a good candidate population from which relevant lessons can be learned and applied in other areas.

Target 2.2 was introduced in recognition of the lack of systematic population assessment in almost all other range states. Currently, there are 13 confirmed *S. teuszii* range states, and six additional countries where the species occurrence is uncertain. Weir and Collins (2020) highlighted Guinea, Guinea-Bissau and Gabon/Congo as three additional key areas that might support viable dolphin populations and where information on abundance and distribution is particularly needed. However, it was recognised that extending the Senegal-Gambia approach to other range states was likely to be a somewhat longer-term goal in practice, occurring over the medium to long term.

In this report we focus on identifying data gaps and priority recommendations for Target 2.1 (Table 1) and Target 2.2 (Table 2).

### **References**

- Ayissi, I., G. H. Segniagbeto, and K. Van Waerebeek. 2014. Rediscovery of Cameroon dolphin, the Gulf of Guinea population of *Sousa teuszii* (Kükenthal, 1892). *ISRN Biodiversity* **2014**:6.
- Collins, T., R. Boumba, J. Thonio, R. Parnell, H. Vanleeuwe, S. Ngouessono, and H. C. Rosenbaum. 2010. The Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*) in Gabon and Congo: cause for optimism or concern? Scientific Committee Report SC/62/SM9, International Whaling Commission.
- Fulling, G. L., J. Foster, D. C. Fertl, and T. D. Fagin. 2008. Pilot survey of coastal small cetaceans in the waters of Guinea-Bissau. Unpublished Technical Report, Prepared for Truk Bissau.
- Leeney, R. H., C. R. Weir, P. Campredon, A. Regalla, and J. Foster. 2016. Occurrence of Atlantic humpback (*Sousa teuszii*) and bottlenose (*Tursiops truncatus*) dolphins in the coastal waters of Guinea-Bissau, with an updated cetacean species checklist. *Journal of The Marine Biological Association of The United Kingdom* **96**:933-941.
- Maigret, J. 1980. Donnees nouvelles sur l'ecologie du *Sousa teuszii* (Cetacea, Delphinidae) de la cote ouest africaine. *Bulletin de l'Institut Francais d'Afrique Noire* **42**:619-633.
- Minton, G., J. R. Kema Kema, A. Todd, L. Korte, P. B. Maganga, J. R. Migoungui Mouelet, A. M. Nguema, E. Moussavou, and G. K. Nguélé. 2017. Multi-stakeholder collaboration yields valuable data for cetacean conservation in Gamba, Gabon. *African Journal of Marine Science* **39**:423-433.

- Van Waerebeek, K., L. Barnett, A. Camara, A. Cham, M. Diallo, A. Djiba, A. Jallow, E. Ndiaye, A. O. S. Ould-Bilal, and I. L. Bamy. 2004. Distribution, status, and biology of the Atlantic humpback dolphin, *Sousa teuszii* (Kukenthal, 1892). *Aquatic Mammals* **30**:56-83.
- Weir, C. R. 2009. Distribution, behaviour and photo-identification of Atlantic humpback dolphins *Sousa teuszii* off Flamingos, Angola. *African Journal of Marine Science* **31**:319-331.
- Weir, C. R. 2015. Photo-identification and habitat use of Atlantic humpback dolphins *Sousa teuszii* around the Río Nuñez estuary in Guinea (West Africa). *African Journal of Marine Science* **37**:325-334.
- Weir, C. R. 2016. Atlantic humpback dolphins (*Sousa teuszii*) in the Saloum Delta (Senegal): distribution, relative abundance and photo-identification. *African Journal of Marine Science* **38**:385-394.
- Weir, C. R., and T. Collins. 2020. Potential short- and medium-term targets for the conservation of *Sousa teuszii*. Consortium for the Conservation of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin, Unpublished report.

### Identifying priority conservation management data gaps

Please list and rank these in the Table according to their perceived importance for achieving conservation and management outcomes.

The WG identified six key data gaps that could potentially be addressed by boat-based population assessment surveys, and which have direct relevance to the conservation and management of *S. teuszii* (Table 1). The identified data gaps apply equally to Target 2.1 (Senegal-Gambia survey) and Target 2.2 (surveys in other range states); Table 1 is therefore applicable to both Targets.

**Table 1.** Key data gaps that could potentially be addressed through the implementation of boat-based population assessment surveys for *S. teuszii*. While Priorities 1–3 could potentially be addressed via either line transect surveys or mark-recapture, Priorities 4–6 are reliant on photo-identification work.

| Priority rank* | Identified data gap               | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>S. teuszii</i>  |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| <b>1</b>       | Spatial and temporal distribution | Understanding when and where <i>S. teuszii</i> occurs will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow assessment of overlap with human activities and inform environmental risk assessments as well as other assessment processes (e.g. IFC PF6);</li> <li>• Identify areas and seasons of persistent high occurrence where threat mitigation should be focused, and that may also warrant marine protected area status if it does not already exist;</li> <li>• Identify habitat use and preferences, and relevant environmental drivers of distribution, that may support predictive habitat modelling of <i>S. teuszii</i> occurrence in unsurveyed regions;</li> <li>• Identify key areas where further research effort should be focused, and what research approaches might be most appropriate/productive.</li> </ul> |
| <b>2</b>       | Population trends                 | Understanding whether a population is increasing, stable, or declining (via trends in either relative or absolute abundance) will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide information on population status and potential declines, as a scientific basis to implement appropriate conservation actions;</li> <li>• Establish respective rates of mortality and fecundity;</li> </ul>  |

|          |                                       |   |
|----------|---------------------------------------|---|
|          |                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Facilitate the allocation of resources and finances where they are most needed;</li> <li>Identify most vulnerable (i.e. declining) populations, where immediate conservation action may be appropriate or critical to prevent local extirpation;</li> <li>Help to identify and better understand the habitats that best support <i>S. teuszii</i> populations and the threats that cause population-level declines.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>3</b> | Population size                       | <p>Understanding how many animals (i.e. absolute abundance) are in a population will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identify the largest, and thus potentially most viable, populations on which to focus longer-term conservation efforts;</li> <li>Facilitate population-level assessment of mortalities and place threats in relevant context;</li> <li>Facilitate measures of reproductive rates, fecundity, and calf survival for assessments of population viability;</li> <li>Clarify species status, both nationally and globally (e.g. Red List assessments);</li> <li>Inform the potential need for ex situ conservation efforts.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>4</b> | Population connectivity and movements | <p>Understanding whether there is immigration or emigration of individuals among study populations will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provide information on the level of geographical or demographic isolation of particular populations, which (in support of genetic work) will also help to define population structure and relevant units to conserve;</li> <li>Help to identify meaningful management units;</li> <li>Inform the development of robust population abundance and trend monitoring surveys.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>5</b> | Site fidelity                         | <p>Understanding the degree of site fidelity exhibited by particular individuals or groups of <i>S. teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Be fundamental to the development of robust population abundance and trend monitoring surveys, e.g. ensuring that the size of the study area captures a representative proportion of the population;</li> <li>Inform threat exposure and impact assessments;</li> <li>Identify priority areas for conservation;</li> <li>Help to inform the planning of any proposed future health assessments;</li> <li>Facilitate community engagement, since people may be able to better relate to, and care about, local dolphins as their “neighbors.”</li> </ul>  |
| <b>6</b> | Social structure                      | <p>Understanding the social structure of <i>S. teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Be fundamental to the development of robust population abundance and trend monitoring surveys and choice of analytical methodology, e.g. ensuring that the size of the study area captures a representative proportion of the population and proper estimation tools are used;</li> <li>Be relevant to the assessment of interactions among social groups and thus heterogeneity of sighting probability within populations;</li> <li>Enable the placement of certain threats into relevant conservation context;</li> <li>Be relevant to understanding of potential unique behaviours or foraging specializations of different local populations;</li> <li>Facilitate measures of reproductive success through determination of rearing patterns, including duration of mother-calf associations.</li> </ul> |



\*Prioritized according to perceived importance for achieving conservation/management outcomes.

| Addressing the priority data gaps for Target 2.1   |  |
|--|--|
| For each of the priority data gaps identified in Table 1, please complete the table below (copy and paste more tables as needed).  |  |
| <p>Recommendations for approaches to address each of the priority data gaps relating to Target 2.1 'Conduct an abundance-distribution survey of the Senegal-Gambia population' are outlined below. This WG specifically considered boat-based field surveys for <i>S. teuszii</i>, and therefore primarily focused on data gaps that could be addressed by visual/photographic methods. However, it is recognized that there is high potential for inter-disciplinary approaches during boat fieldwork that <u>could incorporate recommendations from other WGs</u>, particularly acoustics, biopsy dart sampling (for genetics, sex and age determination, contaminant and hormone concentrations, nutritive condition assessment, and diet information), health assessments and interview surveys. Additionally, capacity-building has been highlighted as an important data/resource gap in the range-wide conservation of <i>S. teuszii</i>, and should be incorporated into all recommended activities.</p> |  |
| Priority data gaps 1 to 3: Distribution, population trends, and population size  |  |
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods / approaches to addressing the data / resource gap:   | 1. Mark-recapture photo-identification and sighting surveys<br>2. Line transect abundance surveys<br>3. Combined line transect/mark-recapture surveys (under particular circumstances)<br>4. Biopsy dart sampling  |
| 2. For each of the methods / approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , it's habitats and range state logistics:  | <p><b>Mark-recapture photo-identification and sighting surveys:</b> Effort-related sighting surveys that produce estimates of relative abundance (e.g. sightings or individuals per km) can be carried out in situations where it is not possible to meet all of the conditions for DISTANCE sampling to produce absolute abundance estimates. For example, transect surveys with fewer or less experienced personnel, or surveys with a non-systematic effort distribution. Indices of relative abundance can be compared temporally (i.e. across seasons or years), or spatially (i.e. between habitats or study sites), providing a potentially useful metric for distribution and trend monitoring. They also help to standardize photo-identification surveys, since the long-term applicability of photo-identification for abundance and trend monitoring requires surveys to be designed in a manner that they systematically cover the area of habitat to be assessed and follow set protocols for comparability. The achievability of combined sighting and photo-identification surveys has already been demonstrated for <i>S. teuszii</i> in three range states, incorporating a range of habitat types. For longer-term photo-identification based monitoring, such surveys need to occur at</p> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <p>sufficiently short intervals that individuals are still recognizable. Photo-ID is labor-intensive and dependent on high specification camera gear. The survey platform may be simpler than needed for a line transect survey, and less limited by habitats. Photo-identification data have a number of other applications, e.g. health and body condition assessments, assessment of individuals' movements, group composition, site fidelity, social structure, estimation of survival rates, and fecundity rates. The ability to identify origins of stranded dolphins based on individually distinctive features first identified in field studies can be important for characterizing threats to specific populations.</p> <p><b>Line transect surveys using DISTANCE sampling methods:</b> Typically, relative expensive and requires significant staffing and suitable platform. Provides a snapshot of abundance across a short period, but can cover large survey areas relatively rapidly. May be challenging to implement in <i>S. teuszii</i> habitat, due to shallow water depths and complex physiography – sandbank systems, surf zones and mangrove channels are used by the species in the Saloum Delta, which limits this methods applicability. Additionally, the potentially low abundance of the species in some regions would hinder the robustness of the method. If carried out in strict passing mode, it provides little opportunity for inter-disciplinary work such as biopsy dart sampling or photo-identification. It typically works less well with rare species or in complicated habitats.</p> <p><b>Combined line transect/mark-recapture surveys:</b> Robust line transect and photo-identification approaches may be combined under certain circumstances, to generate both a distance sampling abundance estimate and the collection of photographic data for mark-recapture analysis. While combining modified line transects for relative abundance with photo-ID is relatively straightforward, combining distance sampling with photo-ID is generally only effective in areas where animal densities are expected to be low such that sighting rates are unlikely to be negatively biased by closing and spending time on photo-identification. The feasibility and appropriateness of combining the methods would need to be assessed in each study area, to determine whether this approach represents a workable compromise, notwithstanding the limitations of each method described in the sections above.</p> <p><b>Biopsy sampling:</b> In addition to a wide number of other applications (see above, and covered by other Working Groups), the collection of skin samples using standard biopsy equipment can potentially address the priority data gaps considered here. For example, by generating population size (using genetic mark-recapture of individuals), producing an estimate of effective population size, through stratification of population assessment by sex and age class, or defining population genetic structure over varying spatial scales. It is contingent on obtaining permits and thus affected by local regulatory limitations, and techniques need to be carefully</p> |
|--|--|

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <p>assessed and implemented so as to minimize the risk of infection and of disturbance to individuals or social groups (a potential concern for this species). Collection of an adequate sample size is likely to take more time than, e.g. photographic identification for abundance estimation, so it is most appropriately considered as a longer-term goal.</p>  |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation / management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p> | <p>(a) At this stage, it is not possible to assess how much survey effort would be required in order to generate robust population abundance or trend estimates, since this depends on several factors including population size and site fidelity. Consequently, the recommended priority short/medium term activity for Target 2.1 is to <b>conduct two preliminary small boat surveys (effort-related sighting surveys and photo-identification work) of the Saloum Delta</b> which will be intended to generate the baseline information needed to inform the design of a more robust and longer-term abundance and population trend survey. The two surveys should be of several weeks durations and be planned for different times of year (with regard to wet and dry seasons), in order to evaluate potential seasonal changes in dolphin distribution or abundance and their potential implications for survey design. They should occur at sufficiently short intervals (i.e. within one year of one another) to avoid mark change between the surveys. It is recommended that the preliminary surveys aim to cover broadly the same area as covered by Weir (2016) in order to have good representative coverage of different habitats. If plausible within the timeframe, permits should be acquired that would allow at least one of the surveys to include the waters of The Gambia. Assuming the amount and distribution of effort is similar between the two preliminary surveys, provisional mark-recapture analysis may be possible.</p> <p>(b) Establishment of a <b>long-term population monitoring programme in the Saloum Delta/Gambian region</b>. The results from (a) should be used to design a survey suitable for robust population monitoring, i.e. a statistically sound, repeatable and systematic survey approach. The spatial scale and temporal frequency of the surveys will be determined by the results from (a), but might be expected to occur at least annually. The longer-term (&gt;2 years) timeframe should facilitate permits to be obtained to include The Gambia in the survey work; this is strongly recommended by the WG in light of known transboundary movements of dolphins across the Senegalese-Gambian border. Following a full evaluation of the cost-benefit of invasive techniques and permitting requirements, the potential to include biopsy sampling in longer-term monitoring fieldwork should be assessed with regard to its application for meeting data gaps identified by this and other WGs.</p> <p>It is noted that the southernmost distribution limit of dolphins from the Senegambia 'population' is unknown, and the population may also range into the area of southern Senegal located south of The Gambia. An assessment of that entire area is recommended under Target 2.2 (Section 4).</p> |

|   |  |                        |                   |
|---|--|------------------------|-------------------|
| With regard to 3a (short / medium action), please provide a broad indication of:<br>(i) likely budget requirement<br>(ii) likely core resource / equipment requirements;<br>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity | (i) The cost <u>per survey</u> to include the items in the table below is estimated at: moderate (~20-75K USD). A breakdown of the estimated costs <u>per survey</u> (each survey being 4 weeks in duration) includes: |                        |                   |
|   | Item   | Approximate cost (USD) | Match funding (%) |
|   | Fieldwork salary for two experienced cetacean researchers (4 weeks @ \$1200 per week)  | 9600                   |                   |
|   | Analysis salary for two experienced cetacean researchers (4 weeks @ \$1200 per week)   | 9600                   |                   |
|   | Fieldwork salary for local personnel for capacity and training (4 weeks @ \$500 per week)  | 2000                   |                   |
|   | International flights/travel for 2 researchers (2 @ \$3000 each, to include local transfers, transit accommodations, baggage)  | 6000                   |                   |
|   | Visas, insurance, anti-malarials etc for 2 researchers   | 700                    |                   |
|   | Permit application costs*  | 150                    |                   |
|   | Accommodation at study site (30 days @ \$75/day)   | 2250                   |                   |
|   | Subsistence (30 days @ \$40/day/pp for 4 people)   | 4800                   |                   |
|   | Boat charter including skipper salary (30 days @ \$100/day)  | 3000                   |                   |
|   | Fuel for the boat (30 days @ \$50/day)   | 1500                   |                   |
|   | Local transport (car hire, fuel)   | 4000                   |                   |
|   | Binoculars x 3 (@ \$300 each) *  | 900                    |                   |
|   | DSLR cameras and lenses x 3 to include memory cards (@ \$4200 each) *  | 12600                  |                   |
|   | GPS x 1 (@ \$300 each) *   | 300                    |                   |
|   | Environmental sampling equipment*  | 400                    |                   |
|   | Pelicanses x 2 (@ \$250 each) *  | 500                    |                   |
|   | Phone/internet expenses for H&S/communications in the field  | 100                    |                   |
|   | Data recording forms and laptop/tablet*  | 500                    |                   |
|   | Portable hard drives for data backup   | 250                    |                   |
|   | Translation of resulting report  | 750                    |                   |
|   | Currency conversion/contingency  | 2000                   |                   |
|   | <b>Total per initial survey</b>  | <b>61,900</b>          |                   |
|   | <b>Total for subsequent surveys without 'one off' costs (one-off costs are marked with*)</b>   | <b>47,050</b>          |                   |
| <b>Priority data gaps 4 to 6: Movements, site fidelity and social structure</b>   |  |                        |                   |
| 1. Please list (as numbered)  | 1. Photo-identification work to identify marked individuals;   |                        |                   |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| points) possible methods / approaches to addressing the data / resource gap:  | 2. Tagging of individual animals. With regard to the data gaps 4 to 6, this would primarily address movements and site fidelity, unless multiple animals were tagged concurrently to provide information on social structure. It can also provide data on habitat use which would feed into Priority data gap 1.   |
| 2. For each of the methods / approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , it's habitats and range state logistics: | <p><b>Photo-identification:</b> Achievability has already been demonstrated for <i>S. teuszii</i> in three range states, providing preliminary information on site fidelity, movement of individuals between areas, and social affiliations among individual dolphins. The method has also been demonstrated as applicable for other <i>Sousa</i> species, as well as other coastal delphinids. Long-term applicability requires surveys to occur at sufficiently short intervals that individuals are still recognizable. Labor-intensive and dependent on high specification camera gear. Image data potentially has other applications, e.g. health assessments, movements, group composition, site fidelity. The data gaps could be achieved using the same images collected during mark-recapture population assessment suggested for Priorities 1-3.</p> <p><b>Tagging:</b> Has not been carried out on <i>S. teuszii</i> to date. Has animal welfare and ethical implications, and corresponding tighter permitting requirements both in the Senegambia region and elsewhere. Would require live capture/handling of animals in order to achieve optimal deployment of tags, and therefore would be considered alongside the potential development of live capture programs to address recommendations by other Working Groups (particularly health assessments) which would include full evaluation of risk and the production of protocols to limit impacts on the animals. Could provide large amounts of detailed data on movements and site use, but for fewer individuals than photo-identification. Selective tagging and tag programming could provide detailed information on social associations.</p> |
| 3. Focusing on conservation / management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:<br>(a) the short/medium-term (<2 years)     | <p>(a) It is recommended that photo-identification surveys are carried out in the Senegambia region to generate the photo-identification datasets needed to address the Priority 4-6 data gaps. This is compatible with the recommendation already made for Priorities 1-3, and further supports a mark-recapture approach rather than line transect approach for survey work in the Senegambia region. Alongside this core recommendation, it is further proposed that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If sufficient funding is available, it is recommended that a higher intensity of photo-identification surveys within a year would help to address these specific data gaps, for example one each in spring, summer, autumn, and winter.</li> <li>• Training of suitable boat drivers in methods to approach dolphins for photo-identification purposes without disturbing them is needed. The WG agreed that the success of photo-identification work is highly reliant on boat drivers being able to place photographers in good positions relative to dolphin groups, and <i>S. teuszii</i> is a sensitive species. Offers have been made by several parties to provide training to boat drivers (and potentially photographers), including: (1) by Randy Wells in conjunction with the long-term field project on bottlenose</li> </ul>   |

| (b) the longer-term (>2 years)  | <p>dolphins in Florida conducted by the Chicago Zoological Society’s Sarasota Dolphin Research Program; (2) by Morigenos in Slovenia, also with bottlenose dolphins; and (3) by Els Vermeulen with <i>Sousa plumbea</i> in South Africa. The latter would provide the most realistic experience with regard to the specific traits of <i>Sousa</i> species.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Images of <i>S. teuszii</i> are obtained on an opportunistic basis whenever possible, for example during other boat surveys for marine fauna in the region or from shore. Local capacity should be built to facilitate this (i.e. training of local personnel in photo-identification techniques, provision of suitable camera equipment).</li><li>• Every effort should be made to obtain dorsal fin identification photographs along with life history and genetic data and samples (total length, sex, skin for genetics, teeth for age determination, ovaries, testis) from stranded animals to enhance our knowledge of life history, population structure, and social structure.</li></ul> <p>(b) As for Priority 1, the establishment of a longer-term photo-identification survey in the Saloum Delta, that supports the use of mark-recapture rather than line transect surveys for population assessment purposes.</p> |                               |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
|---|--|-------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|---|------|---|--------------------------------------|-----|---|---------------|---|-----|------|---|-----|----------------------------------|---|-----|-------------------------------|---|-----|---|---|-----|----------------------|--------------|--|
| With regard to 3a (short / medium action), please provide a broad indication of:<br>(i) likely budget requirement<br>(ii) likely core resource / equipment requirements;<br>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity | <p>Since the photo-identification components are compatible with a mark-recapture sighting survey, the budget is the same as for Priorities 1-3. However, an increase in temporal survey resolution would result in concurrent increases in budgets. The budget for Priorities 1-3 is per survey, and can simply be multiplied to add in extra surveys across a year.</p> <p>The estimated costs for one month of training of a boat driver with the Chicago Zoological Society’s Sarasota Dolphin Research Program in Florida are provided below. Costs would be doubled if a photographer was also trained.</p> <table><tr><th>Item</th><th>Approximate cost (USD)</th><th>Match funding by CZS-SDRP (%)</th></tr><tr><td>International travel, visas, health insurance</td><td>3000</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Salary for boat driver for one month</td><td>400</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Accommodation</td><td>–</td><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>Food</td><td>–</td><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>CZS-SDRP staff time for training</td><td>–</td><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>Vessel provision for training</td><td>–</td><td>100</td></tr><tr><td>Local transportation in Sarasota, Florida</td><td>–</td><td>100</td></tr><tr><td><b>Total to find</b></td><td><b>3,400</b></td><td></td></tr></table>  | Item                          | Approximate cost (USD) | Match funding by CZS-SDRP (%) | International travel, visas, health insurance | 3000 | 0 | Salary for boat driver for one month | 400 | 0 | Accommodation | – | 100 | Food | – | 100 | CZS-SDRP staff time for training | – | 100 | Vessel provision for training | – | 100 | Local transportation in Sarasota, Florida | – | 100 | <b>Total to find</b> | <b>3,400</b> |  |
| Item  | Approximate cost (USD)   | Match funding by CZS-SDRP (%) |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
| International travel, visas, health insurance   | 3000   | 0                             |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
| Salary for boat driver for one month  | 400  | 0                             |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
| Accommodation   | –  | 100                           |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
| Food  | –  | 100                           |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
| CZS-SDRP staff time for training  | –  | 100                           |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
| Vessel provision for training   | –  | 100                           |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
| Local transportation in Sarasota, Florida   | –  | 100                           |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |
| <b>Total to find</b>  | <b>3,400</b>   |                               |                        |                               |   |      |   |                                      |     |   |               |   |     |      |   |     |                                  |   |     |                               |   |     |   |   |     |                      |              |  |



## Addressing the priority data gaps for Target 2.2

For each of the priority data gaps identified in Table 1, please complete the table below (copy and paste more tables as needed).

Recommendations for approaches to address each of the priority data gaps relating to Target 2.2 'Extend the Senegal-Gambia approach to other key range states' are outlined below. By definition this is likely to be a longer-term target (>2 years), since it requires a successful approach to have been implemented in Senegal-Gambia beforehand. Consequently, the data gaps and methods summarized for Target 2.1 will all apply to other range states, although associated costs may differ.

With regard to the identification of key range states for implementing future surveys under Target 2.2, the WG recommends the following based on Table 4.1:

- Currently, the occurrence of *S. teuszii* in six potential range states is unconfirmed, and allocating limited resources to population assessments in those countries is *not recommended as a priority* until presence-absence surveys (e.g. interviews) or opportunistic records have confirmed that the species is present.
- Of the 13 confirmed range states, Western Sahara and Angola are both located at the latitudinal limits of the known distribution range, and there is evidence to suggest that the population size in both countries is likely to be low and limited to small areas. While it would be beneficial to conduct population assessments in those two range states, they are currently considered lower priority than countries within the core distribution range that potentially support larger populations. However, genetic work is needed in those areas to assess whether those edge 'populations' harbor important genetic diversity that should be maintained, in which case their priority status may increase. Additionally, should climate change result in changes in the current species range, these edge populations may be important indicators.
- Togo and Benin have very short coastlines and are therefore unlikely by themselves to support large *S. teuszii* populations, although there are likely to be transboundary movements of *S. teuszii* between these and neighbouring countries. Additionally, available data suggest that both countries appear to have low numbers of *S. teuszii*. Consequently, those two countries are not currently considered priorities for population assessments (this may change if more evidence becomes available from e.g. interview surveys), but it would be useful to incorporate their coastlines into a wider northern Gulf of Guinea assessment that could also include Nigeria.
- The remaining nine confirmed range states are all high priorities for population assessments. Within those high priority areas, Guinea and Guinea-Bissau are identified as particularly high priority areas for survey effort based on: (1) having the largest amounts of potentially-suitable habitat (i.e. relatively wide shallow shelves and multiple estuaries); (2) their location within the core species range, (3) potentially supporting relatively large *S. teuszii* populations based on anecdotal data; and (4) lacking recent systematic survey effort:

- The WG emphasizes that the prioritization of countries/regions in Table 4.1 for implementing population assessment work is for the purposes of allocating limited funds and resources to areas where maximum conservation/management benefit may be most achievable. **It is strongly emphasized that work for *S. teuszii* is needed in all 19 countries.**

**Table 4.1.** Occurrence of *S. teuszii* in 19 confirmed and potential range states (north to south), with a priority assessment for implementing population assessment survey work.

| Range state                  | <i>S. teuszii</i><br>confirmed | Status                               | Priority*      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|
| Western Sahara               | Yes                            | Edge of range/remnant                | Medium         |
| Mauritania                   | Yes                            | Core range, suitable habitats        | High           |
| Senegal                      | Yes                            | Core range, suitable habitats        | High           |
| The Gambia                   | Yes                            | Core range, suitable habitats        | High           |
| <b>Guinea-Bissau</b>         | <b>Yes</b>                     | <b>Core range, suitable habitats</b> | <b>Highest</b> |
| <b>Guinea</b>                | <b>Yes</b>                     | <b>Core range, suitable habitats</b> | <b>Highest</b> |
| Sierra Leone                 | No                             | Presence requires confirmation       | Low            |
| Liberia                      | No                             | Presence requires confirmation       | Low            |
| Côte d'Ivoire                | No                             | Presence requires confirmation       | Low            |
| Ghana                        | No                             | Presence requires confirmation       | Low            |
| Togo                         | Yes                            | Short coastline                      | Medium         |
| Benin                        | Yes                            | Short coastline                      | Medium         |
| Nigeria                      | Yes                            | Core range, suitable habitats        | High           |
| Cameroon                     | Yes                            | Core range, suitable habitats        | High           |
| Equatorial Guinea            | No                             | Presence requires confirmation       | Low            |
| Gabon                        | Yes                            | Core range, suitable habitats        | High           |
| Republic of Congo            | Yes                            | Core range, suitable habitats        | High           |
| Democratic Republic of Congo | No                             | Presence requires confirmation       | Low            |
| Angola                       | Yes                            | Edge of range/remnant                | Medium         |

\*Priority is assigned specifically with regard to implementing systematic population assessment surveys using the Senegambia model; the WG acknowledges that **survey work is needed in all 19 range states.**

## A6. Working Group 4 Full Report: Conservation Genetics

| Background   |
|--|
| <p>What is already known/available for your WG Target with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?</p>   |
| <p><b>Working Group Target:</b> Working Group 4 was tasked with assessing the following target identified by Weir et al. (2020):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2.3. Assess genetic diversity and population structure</li> </ul> <p><b>Background</b></p> <p>Conservation genetics is integral to an overall strategic plan for species recovery. To implement a conservation plan, we first must figure out what we are saving. Are there distinct populations that each deserve to be saved, or are Atlantic humpback dolphins (AHDs) so genetically similar, that it does not matter which population is targeted? Is one population more genetically diverse than another? Is <i>Sousa teuszii</i> even a distinct species? Is there gene flow between AHD and other members of <i>Sousa</i> that may affect its conservation and status as a species?</p> <p>All of these questions are vital for success of a conservation program and all can be answered by genetic analysis (Frankham et al., 2007). Genetic studies can reveal the degree of diversity inherit within a species across its range, identify geographically significant management units, and describe the connectivity between distinct populations (Frankham, 1995; Supple and Shapiro, 2018). This lack of knowledge can affect captive breeding programs and translocations, in which animals from genetically distinct populations may not be interchangeable. In addition, the preservation of the widest possible genetic diversity, or "evolutionary potential", across distinct lineages can increase the chances of survival of a species due to changing and shifting threats across its range. (Moritz, 1994). Genetic analysis can also reveal populations under the greatest risk of decline due to low genetic diversity and effects due to inbreeding (Frankham et al., 2007). In contrast, focusing conservation on more diverse populations with more diversity has a potentially greater chance of success.</p> <p>Little work has been done on the genetics of the Atlantic humpback dolphin (<i>Sousa teuszii</i>) and next to nothing is known regarding genetic diversity and geographic structuring across its range. Much of the genetic data collected for <i>S. teuszii</i> was generated to investigate the overall phylogenetic relationships within the genus <i>Sousa</i> and no study has focused solely on the Atlantic humpback dolphin. Earlier studies sequenced mitochondrial loci (control region, cytochrome <i>b</i>) from one sample of <i>S. teuszii</i> from Mauritania with the aim of investigating the phylogeny of the genus <i>Sousa</i> (Frère et al. 2008, 2011). These studies placed <i>S. teuszii</i> in a group with <i>S. chinensis</i> (Indo-Pacific humpback dolphin) to the exclusion of an Australian form that would eventually be described as the new species <i>S. sahilensis</i> (Jefferson and Rosenbaum, 2014). Further studies by Mendez et al. (2013) sequenced more samples across the genus <i>Sousa</i> including samples of <i>S. teuszii</i> from Gabon and Congo. Mendez et al. (2013) showed that all <i>S. teuszii</i> formed a distinct grouping, however they</p> |

were most closely related to individuals of *Sousa plumbea* from Southeastern Africa, calling into question the identity of currently recognized species of *Sousa*. This essentially means that we are not 100% clear that *Sousa teuszii* is a true species genetically distinguishable from the Indian Ocean humpback dolphin. Recently, McGowen et al. (2019) sequenced the complete mitochondrial genome from a Senegalese individual, revealing a ~1.9% divergence from *Sousa chinensis* and setting the stage for further studies using many more samples.

Studies specifically focused on the Atlantic humpback dolphin using both mitochondrial and nuclear loci are sorely needed. Perhaps the biggest hurdle hindering a large-scale analysis of the Atlantic humpback dolphin is the availability of samples. New genetic techniques such as Illumina sequencing and target sequence capture allow for the sequencing of low-quality samples such as degraded tissue and bone, teeth, or dried tissue from museum specimens. Figure 1 (attached) shows the geographic range of known samples, both tissue samples as well as museum specimens. These will provide a starting point for analysis, but large gaps remain and further collection is needed, both in the form of biopsies and opportunistic sampling of stranded individuals and skeletal material. The rapid development of environmental DNA (eDNA) in population genetics studies is another avenue for generating genetic data (Parsons et al., 2018; Baker et al., 2018). Environmental DNA can be gathered from water near swimming dolphins and are currently not subject to CITES regulations, making it easier to both gather and transport internationally. Below we highlight five priorities for how to address "Target 2.3. Assess genetic diversity and population structure" and to a lesser extent "Target 2.4. Improve the sampling of dead animals."

## References

- Baker CS, Steel D, Nieu Kirk S, Klinck H. 2018. Environmental DNA (eDNA) from the wake of the whales: droplet digital PCR for the detection of species identification. *Front. Mar. Sci.* 5:133.
- Frankham R. 1995. Conservation genetics. *Annual Review of Genetics* 29:305-327.
- Frankham R, Ballou JD, Briscoe DA. 2007. *Introduction to Conservation Genetics. Second Edition*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- Frère CH, Hale PT, Porter L, Cockcroft VG, Dalebout ML. 2008. Phylogenetic analysis of mtDNA sequences suggests revision of humpback dolphin (*Sousa* spp.) taxonomy is needed. *Marine and Freshwater Research* 59:259-268.
- Frère CH, Seddon J, Palmer C, Porter L, Parra G. 2011. Multiple lines of evidence for an Australasian geographic boundary in the Indo-Pacific humpback dolphin (*Sousa chinensis*): population or species divergence? *Conservation Genetics* 12(6):1633–1638.
- Jefferson TA, Rosenbaum HC. 2014. Taxonomic revision of the humpback dolphins (*Sousa* spp.), and description of a new species from Australia. *Marine Mammal Science* 30(4):1494–1541.
- McGowen MR, Murphy KR, Ndong I, Potter CW, Keith-Diagne LW. 2019. The complete mitochondrial genome of the critically endangered Atlantic humpback dolphin *Sousa teuszii* (Kükenthal, 1892). *Mitochondrial DNA Part B Resources* 5(1):257-259.
- Mendez M, Jefferson TA, Kolokotronis SO, Krützen M, Parra GJ, Collins T, Minton G, Baldwin R, Berggren P, Sarnblad A, et al. 2013. Integrating multiple lines of evidence to better understand the evolutionary divergence of humpback dolphins along their entire distribution range: a new dolphin species in Australian waters? *Molecular Ecology* 22(23):5936–5948.

Parsons KM, Everett M, Dahlheim M, Park L. 2018. Water, water everywhere: environmental DNA can unlock population structure in elusive marine species. *Royal Society Open Science* 5:180537.

Supple MA, Shapiro B. 2018. Conservation of biodiversity in the genomics era. *Genome Biology* 19:131.

Weir, C., R. H. Leeney, and T. Collins. 2020. Reinvigorating conservation efforts for the Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*): A brief progress report. Document presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission SC/68B/SM/07:1-20.

### Identifying priority conservation management data gaps

Please list and rank these in the Table according to their perceived importance for achieving conservation and management outcomes.

| Priority rank | Identified data/resource gap                                 | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i>  |
|---------------|--|--|
| 1             | Status of <i>S. teuszii</i> as a species                     | At present it is not 100% clear <i>S. teuszii</i> is a true species, as its lineage is nested within <i>S. plumbea</i> .   |
| 2             | Geographic structuring within <i>S. teuszii</i>              | Understanding how <i>S. teuszii</i> is genetically structured will: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Identify geographically distinct subunits and "evolutionary significant units" for further conservation action</li> <li>2. Identify the degree of gene flow and between populations for evaluating connectivity and movement between populations.</li> </ol> For conservation, this will inform decisions on which populations to focus conservation efforts, as well as decisions regarding captive breeding and translocation. |
| 3             | Estimates of genetic diversity across and within populations | Understanding diversity across and within populations: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Help to identify populations at risk of low genetic diversity and inbreeding</li> <li>2. Evaluate the overall genetic health of specific populations</li> </ol>   |
| 4             | New genetic samples across range                             | Obtaining new genetic samples will <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Allow for the further success of Priorities 1 &amp; 2</li> <li>2. Identify collaborators for further genetic monitoring in range countries</li> </ol>   |
| 5             | Capacity building for genetic research within Africa         | Capacity building will: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Increased training for Africans to continue to conduct conservation genetics work in their home countries</li> <li>2. Reduce reliance on international export structures</li> </ol>  |

| Data/resource gap - Priority Rank 1: Status of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> as a species  |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:  | 1. Generate nuclear single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) using a combination of RAD-Seq and target sequence capture from new/existing samples from <i>S. teuszii</i> , <i>S. plumbea</i> , <i>S. chinensis</i> and <i>S. sahalensis</i> .   |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , it's habitats and range state logistics:                                       | <p>Generating genome wide SNPs requires good quality DNA. This may be the largest major constraint since many of the samples already available from <i>S. plumbea</i>, <i>S. chinensis</i> and <i>S. sahalensis</i> are poor quality samples from stranded animals. We also need to obtain additional samples from <i>S. teuszii</i> (see other priorities).</p> <p>We will use two techniques to generate nuclear SNP data. First, we will generate "RAD Tags" from high-quality tissue samples to identify SNPs. Then we will design RNA baits of those "RAD Tags" for target sequence capture. This will enable us to generate SNPs for the low-quality samples (poor quality tissue and museum samples). This could require some extra work in first in acquiring a few 'decent' samples from biopsies or fresh strandings. At present, in it unclear when this could be completed, but potentially 2 years from now.</p> |
| 3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:<br><br>(a) the short/medium-term (<2 years)<br><br>(b) the longer-term (>2 years) | <p>Long term goals include the generation and analysis of the SNPs using RAD-seq from samples available for all <i>Sousa</i> species. The generation of SNPs will allow us to produce phylogenetic trees to establish the placement of <i>S. teuszii</i> within the context of the genus <i>Sousa</i>. This will establish that <i>S. teuszii</i> is indeed a species clearly separate from other members of the genus. The status of <i>S. teuszii</i> obviously has huge ramifications of conservation and it is essential that this question is the highest priority.</p>  |
| With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:  | <p>(i) Moderate – around 20K USD including:<br/>Total \$14980</p> <p>For a total of 96 samples: 2bRAD Sequencing CD Genomics (\$1500); Custom Arbor Biosci myBaits Custom 20-40K, 48 reactions kit (Cat#300248.v5)</p>  |



|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(\$8090); NEBNext Ultra II FS DNA Library Prep Kit for Illumina with Sample Purification Beads x 2: E6177S (\$695 x2: \$1390); Other lab supplies (\$1000); Two sequencing runs on HiSeq (\$3000)</p> <p>(ii and iii) All lab work can be performed at the genomic laboratories of the American Museum of Natural History or at the Smithsonian National Museum of Natural History. If needed the sequencing of genomic libraries can be outsourced.</p> |
|--|---|

| <b>Data/resource gap - Priority Ranks 2 and 3: Degree of geographic structuring and estimation of genetic diversity within <i>Sousa teuszii</i></b>   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>   | <p>1. Generate complete mitochondrial genomes from new/existing samples</p> <p>2. Generate nuclear single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) using RAD-Seq and/or target sequence capture from new/existing samples</p> <p>3. Whole genome sequencing from high-quality sample(s)</p> <p>4. Environmental DNA collection and analysis</p> <p>All existing specimens/samples of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> whether tissue, teeth, or bone are shown in Figure 1 on a map of West and Central Africa.</p>  |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, it's habitats and range state logistics:</p> | <p>Population genomics projects need to sample multiple parts of the genome in order to get a complete picture of diversity within populations and relationships between populations. While DNA data derived from the mitochondrion (control region, cytochrome b) is easier generate and can give a snapshot of population complexity, the mitochondrion is maternally inherited and represents a small portion of available data. Nuclear DNA data in the form of "single nucleotide polymorphisms" can be quickly generated using next-generation Illumina sequencing technology. These data can give a more detailed and complete picture of population structure. In addition, Illumina sequencing is better able to deal with degraded samples such as stranded and museum samples.</p> |

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <p>1. We will generate whole mitochondrial genomes using target sequence capture/RNA baits built from the mitochondrial genome of McGowen et al. (2019). We will use both tissue samples as well as DNA extracted from bones and teeth. McGowen has recently sequenced complete mitochondrial genomes from multiple tissue and museum specimens of the Irrawaddy dolphin (unpublished), some of which were collected in the 1870s. Therefore, there is a high degree of success. After samples are transported to the Smithsonian, this has the opportunity to begin immediately. Analyses performed will be similar to Louis et al. (2020). For some additional future samples, we will generate control region and cytochrome b data within Africa using standard PCR and Sanger sequencing techniques (see Rank 3).</p> <p>2. We will use two techniques to generate nuclear SNP data. First, we will generate "RAD Tags" from high-quality tissue samples to identify SNPs. Then we will design RNA baits of those "RAD Tags" for target sequence capture. This will enable us to generate SNPs for the low quality samples (poor quality tissue and museum samples). This could require some extra work in first in acquiring a few 'decent' samples from biopsies or fresh strandings. At present, in it unclear when this could be completed, but potentially 1-2 years from now.</p> <p>3. We will generate a complete reference genome for the Atlantic humpback dolphin through the Vertebrate Genomes Project (VGP) at Rockefeller University (Morin et al., 2020a; Rhie et al., 2020). Morin et al. (2020b) sequenced the whole genome of the vaquita using this pipeline and determined that the species most likely had low population size and low genetic diversity long before its recent decline. The long persistence of low diversity means that the vaquita could potentially cope with its current population without severe genetic affects. This phase of the project cannot take place until we are able to obtain fresh blood or tissue and immediately freeze at low temperatures. Blood/tissue will be collected when future researchers are taking physiological measurements.</p> <p>4. As noted above, it may prove difficult to export or obtain tissue samples from biopsies or stranded animals in some nations. eDNA has the benefit of CURRENTLY not needing export or CITES permits (although this may change). Therefore, collaborators and/or members of CCAHD conducting surveys can collect water from wakes of swimming dolphins. Within these water samples, very small pieces of AHD DNA potentially exist. Using methods in Baker et al. (2018) and Parsons et al., 2018 we will amplify a small segment of the mitochondrial control region and compare these AHD control regions already obtained in the studies above. Filters, pump equipment, and preservative will</p> |
|--|---|

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <p>be provided to collectors and instructions given via taped video. Techniques on collecting eDNA and testing out protocols will first be attempted with the AHDs in Sine-Saloum Delta in Senegal. eDNA extraction and analysis will be performed either at Smithsonian or at an appropriate lab in Africa, if possible.</p> <p><b>References:</b></p> <p>Louis et al. (2020). Influence of past climate change on phylogeography and demographic history of narwhals, <i>Monodon monoceros</i>. <i>Proc R Soc B</i> 287: 20192964.</p> <p>Morin et al. (2020a). Building genomic infrastructure: Sequencing platinum-standard reference-quality genomes of all cetacean species. <i>Marine Mammal Science</i> 36(4):1356-1366.</p> <p>Morin et al. (2020b). Reference genome and demographic history of the most endangered marine mammal, the vaquita. <i>Molecular Ecology Resources</i> Online Early: <a href="https://doi.org/10.1111/1755-0998.13284">https://doi.org/10.1111/1755-0998.13284</a></p> <p>Rhie et al. (2020). Towards complete and error-free genome assemblies of all vertebrate species. <i>bioRxiv</i>.</p>   |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p> | <p>A quick picture of general diversity within the species is needed to determine distinct lineages on which to focus conservation efforts. This can quickly be provided by the mitochondrial genomes with a more detailed picture following with SNP data. As we need more samples from gaps within the current range, we may need to process more samples as they come in.</p> <p>a) Short term goals include completion of generating mitochondrial genomes for all currently available samples (Figure 1); obtaining new samples for use in both mitochondrial and nuclear analyses (See Priority 3).</p> <p>b) Longer term goals will include the generation of SNP data, whole genome sequencing, and eDNA, as all will require acquiring new samples and/or higher quality tissues. If we are able to answer many of our questions with fresh tissue samples, then eDNA will prove redundant. However, if we are without options in some range countries, eDNA will be essential for providing some information regarding haplotypes and relationships with other populations. eDNA collection by survey teams will be a short to medium term goal as this can be done in tandem with these groups.</p> |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p>  | <p>(i) Potential budget is moderate (~20-75K USD): \$53280.</p> <p>Goal 1: Total \$6300</p> <p>To process 48 samples, we will need to order myBaits MITO 48 reactions kit (Arbor Biosci Cat#303048) (\$2160), NEBNext Ultra II FS DNA Library Prep Kit</p>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>for Illumina with Sample Purification Beads x 2: E6177S (\$695 x2: \$1390), Sequencing run on HiSeq (\$1500); Other lab supplies (\$1000); Shipping (\$250)</p> <p>Goal 2: Total \$14980</p> <p>2bRAD Sequencing CD Genomics (\$1500); Custom Arbor Biosci myBaits Custom 20-40K, 48 reactions kit (Cat#300248.v5) (\$8090); NEBNext Ultra II FS DNA Library Prep Kit for Illumina with Sample Purification Beads x 2: E6177S (\$695 x2: \$1390); Other lab supplies (\$1000); Two sequencing runs on HiSeq (\$3000)</p> <p>Goal 3: Total \$22000</p> <p>This is the cost of generating the highest quality genome using the Vertebrate Genomes Project (VGP) pipeline (\$15K); shipping/cost of liquid nitrogen (\$1K); cost of travel for McGowen and assistant for collection (\$6K).</p> <p>Goal 4: Total \$10000</p> <p>Investment is low (&lt;\$20K), as eDNA activities will be performed while surveys and other activities are ongoing. Filters and preservative will be provided free of charge from a Smithsonian initiative.</p> <p>(ii)</p> <p>All lab work will be performed at the molecular lab of the Smithsonian National Museum of Natural History where consumables are free. Sequencing will be outsourced to various Smithsonian partners. For African laboratory work, see Priority 3. Assistance with export paperwork/costs may be needed. Travel and accommodation for McGowen and an assistant for collection of blood/tissue from live animals for genome sequencing. For eDNA, filters, preservatives, lab time, and analysis will be provided free at the Smithsonian; however, if we find capacity at an African institution, then we will have to pay for these resources. DNA sequencing will be a cost in either location.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any co-funding or donations in kind.</p> <p>Rebecca Gwin and James Glen Mead Endowment for Marine Mammal Research at the Smithsonian National Museum of Natural History: we can expect a contribution to these costs of at least <b>\$5000 per year</b>.</p> |
|--|---|

Data/resource gap - Priority Rank 4 & 5: New genetic samples across range and building capacity for genetic research in Africa

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Contacting local collaborators in range states who could collect samples from carcasses and report live strandings</li> <li>2. Develop protocols for both dead and live animal sampling and provide specific guidance on the appropriate storage of samples so that they would meet the requirements for genetic work</li> <li>3. Identify genetics laboratories in range states that could potentially analyze samples and create a list of their capabilities.</li> <li>4. Provide training for African genetics laboratories personnel and graduate students to extract DNA, run PCRs, etc.</li> </ol>   |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, its habitats and range state logistics:</p>      | <p>There is some overlap of priority 4 with WG 2 (Outreach and Capacity Building), WG 5 (Sampling of strandings and bycatch) and WG 7 (health assessments). As such, we believe securing partners in most range states to be highly achievable, since it is a priority action for several WGs. We will be constrained in countries where no local people (researchers, government agents, etc.) are able to help. We have already contacted potential local collaborators in several countries and received positive responses from collaborators in The Gambia, Benin, Cameroon, Congo, Gabon, Ivory Coast, Mauritania, the Republic of Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, and Nigeria.</p> <p>Developing protocols for genetics sampling should be achievable in the short term, given the expertise that exists in this WG. Training will be needed for local collaborators, which may need to be done online in the short term, but in person training will likely be more effective in the longer term. We will work to identify genetics laboratories that could analyze samples in-country, which should be achievable in the short term if facilities exist. Training people in African genetics laboratories will take a longer-term effort and will mostly need to be achieved through in-person training, as well.</p> |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> | <p>Methods 1 &amp; 2 listed above should be able to be addressed in the short term, although some collaborators may not collect samples after training due to logistic constraints or lack of will, and samples may take long time frames to export. It is essential that we expand our network on the ground to collect opportunistic genetics samples at whenever they are available.</p> <p>In terms of Methods 3 &amp; 4, several facilities have already been identified and should be approached: the former MetaBiota lab in Yaoundé, Cameroon which is now being run by the Cameroonian government (and where Aristide Kamla has already set up an MOU), the lab in Franceville, Gabon, and the</p>   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>   | <p>IRD/INRA lab in Dakar, Senegal (Lucy has a contact with a researcher there). If any of these labs (and any others identified in the short term) are able to take <i>Sousa</i> samples for analyses, training can be arranged as soon as funding is available. Until training can be arranged, samples will likely need to be exported to laboratories in the USA (Smithsonian, AMNH) or Europe (U. of Lisbon). In the longer term it will be important for both the speed of analyses and building capacity to have genetics labs in at least several of the range countries.</p>   |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(i) Moderate: \$25K (this is an estimate, as investigation of laboratories would need to happen first before we know what is possible)</p> <p>The budget will increase as the number of local collaborators in range states increases but should be fairly low overall to collect and export samples, assuming there are only a few per year (\$250/collaborator/year). However, if captures are planned or a die-off occurs, we should be prepared to collect and export samples and therefore would need a higher budget. Estimated total costs: \$5000</p> <p>Payment for use of laboratories and supplies is unknown at this moment. But future investigation will establish costs of use and training. Tentatively we would put this around \$20K.</p> <p>(ii) Access to boats and vehicles to get to carcasses, trained personnel to collect samples, sampling tools (scalpels, vials with preservative liquid, nitrile gloves, permanent markers, datasheets), appropriate storage (freezers, refrigeration or dry storage), export and import permits if samples are to be analyzed outside of the country where they are collected, laboratories to analyze samples, and personnel time to do bench work, analyses and publications of results. Also, Conservation genetics laboratories with capacity for DNA extraction, PCR, and Sanger sequencing. Next generation sequencing capabilities are desirable, if possible. Compensation of personnel for training, bench work, analysis and publication time.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any co-funding or donations in kind.</p> <p>Costs of transportation to field sites to collect samples (vehicle and boat fuel) could potentially be donated by some collaborators, AACF can provide logistics coordination for field site/ in person training.</p> |

## A7. Working Group 5 Full Report: Documenting and Sampling Carcasses

| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Background</b></p> <p>What is already known/available <u>for your WG Target</u> with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?</p>   |
|--|
| <p><b>Working Group Target:</b> The target for Working Group 5 from Weir et al. (2020) was:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Target 2.4 – Improve the <b>Documentation</b>* and Sampling of Dead Animals (*note that ‘documentation’ was added to the original target).</i></li> </ul> <p>* The original target for Working Group 5 from Weir &amp; Collins (2020) was: <b>‘assess the feasibility and urgency of dead animal sampling needs’</b>. Following discussion, the group decided that this should be slightly altered to <b>‘to assess the feasibility and urgency of dead animal <b>reporting and sampling needs</b>’</b> in order to better reflect the value of documenting any level of information associated with carcass recovery from stranded or bycaught <i>Sousa teuszii</i>.</p> <p><b>Background</b></p> <p>A recent report published by the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN), stressed the importance of the early completion of data gaps for at-risk populations of small cetaceans (Taylor et al., 2020). Doing so provides species experts and conservation managers with the necessary tools to act as efficiently and successfully as possible when planning urgent and long-term conservation actions. The IUCN document <b>highlights <i>Sousa teuszii</i> as one of the seven species of small cetaceans of greatest concern</b>, with an urgent recommendation for community-based research to fill knowledge gaps on geographic distribution, animal abundance, and threats to species survival.</p> <p>Effective necropsy sampling and analysis is a proven tool to determine important baseline information on species--specific biology, ecology, genetics, and individual and population health (Geraci &amp; Lounsbury, 1993; Lane et al., 2014; Norris, 1961; Pugliares et al., 2007; Rowles, Van Dolah, &amp; Hohn, 2001). Since cetaceans are difficult to study due to their aquatic environment, information obtained from necropsies is a critical component of information gathering that can both help answer basic biology questions and aid in population health investigations (Plön et al., 2015).</p> <p>To date, minimal carcass recovery efforts are in place in Africa for aquatic species (Plön et al., 2015). Carcass recovery and necropsies of cetaceans are challenging due to limited resources, lack of trained personnel, hot and/or humid weather conditions that cause rapid tissue necrosis, rapid butchering of carcasses for human consumption, scavenging by wild animals and birds, as well as a lack of accessibility to some of the remote locations under consideration (Plön et al., 2015). These challenges and constraints result in fewer necropsies</p> |



being conducted, less overall identification of mortality causation and disease, and a lack of understanding of population level health threats than might be possible in geographic regions where stranding response efforts are better-established.

## **ASSESSMENT OF DATA GAPS**

Target 2.4 was identified by Weir et al. (2020) in an effort to inform evaluation of whether it is feasible to:

1. *Identify what types of samples are most critical for life history, health assessments, and genetics.*
2. *Discuss the establishment of basic data reporting and sampling/necropsy protocols that can be followed with simple training and with the resources realistically available in range states.*
3. *Implement support through training and equipment.*
4. *Prioritize sample collection where dead animals are most easily accessed.*

To investigate Target 2.4, the group listed and prioritized data gaps that could be addressed by examining dead animals (Table 1). The more detailed methodologies for filling these data gaps were explored and scored as to their feasibility, either due to challenging range state logistics and/or funding constraints. Since methodologies were the same for all of the data gaps listed (1-8), they are discussed together in the following recommendations.

To fill as many data gaps as possible, the group recommends identifying a number of countries where enabling conditions are already in place to begin or expand data collection efforts. These places include (but are not limited to):

- Senegal (where the African Aquatic Conservation Fund does regular beach/stranding surveys and is building a stranding reporting network);
- Cameroon (where the African Marine Mammal Conservation Organisation conducts environmental education and uses a stranding reporting App);
- Gabon, where the National Parks Agency has a network of coastal and marine park wardens and rangers who report strandings; and
- The Republic of Congo (and specifically Konkouati-Douli National Park) where coastal park rangers have been trained in reporting of cetacean sightings and strandings.

Identification of necessary equipment, together with suitable laboratories and personnel to carry out sampling work within range states is imperative. Local capacity building for appropriate long-term sample storage and diagnostic testing assay development and validation is also needed (Plön et al., 2015). Standardization of data reporting and sampling protocols as well as prioritization of sample collection to establish baseline parameters is also needed in order to allow for comparable results across research groups and regions, and the execution of coordinated research efforts that allow for the recognition of regional conclusions (Plön et al., 2015).

Training of local personnel through the provision of appropriate manuals and 'hands on' training courses is essential. The group strongly recommends a community-based approach to all efforts as outlined below, with a focus on local capacity building through training in association with established stranding and veterinary organizations and facilities worldwide. WG5 recommends hands-on training and the adaptation

and dissemination of suitable tiered necropsy and sampling protocols commence immediately where possible.

Carcasses obtained through bycatch or strandings are invaluable resources for data collection (Plön et al., 2015). Surveillance of individual animal and population health is an important tool for conservation management (Plön et al., 2015) and should be prioritized for *Sousa teuszii*.

## REFERENCES

Geraci, J., & Lounsbury, V. (1993). Marine Mammals Ashore: A Field Guide for Strandings, Texas A&M Sea Grant. *Galveston, TX*, 167-251.

Lane, E. P., De Wet, M., Thompson, P., Siebert, U., Wohlsein, P., & Plön, S. (2014). A systematic health assessment of Indian ocean bottlenose (*Tursiops aduncus*) and Indo-Pacific humpback (*Sousa plumbea*) dolphins incidentally caught in shark nets off the KwaZulu-Natal coast, South Africa. *PLoS one*, 9(9), e107038.

Norris, K. S. (1961). Standardized methods for measuring and recording data on the smaller cetaceans. *Journal of Mammalogy*, 42(4), 471-476.

Plön, S., de Wet, M., Lane, E., Wohlsein, P., Siebert, U., & Thompson, P. (2015). A standardized necropsy protocol for health investigations of small cetaceans in southern Africa. *African Journal of Wildlife Research*, 45(3), 332-341.

Pugliares, K. R., Bogomolni, A., Touhey, K. M., Herzig, S. M., Harry, C. T., & Moore, M. J. (2007). Marine mammal necropsy: an introductory guide for stranding responders and field biologists. *Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution Technical Document*, 6, 117.

Rowles, T. K., Van Dolah, F. M., & Hohn, A. A. (2001). Gross necropsy and specimen collection protocols. In *CRC handbook of marine mammal medicine* (pp. 499-520): CRC Press.

Taylor, B. L., Abel, G., Miller, P., Gomez, F., Fersen, L. v., DeMaster, D., . . . Cipriano, F. (2020). Ex situ options for cetacean conservation. *Occasional Paper of the IUCN Species Survival Commission*(66).

Weir, C., R. H. Leeney, and T. Collins. 2020. Reinvigorating conservation efforts for the Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*): A brief progress report. Document presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission SC/68B/SM/07:1-20.

## Identifying priority conservation management data gaps

Please list and rank these in the table according to their perceived importance for achieving conservation and management outcomes.

**Table 1: Dead animal data gaps**

| Priority rank | Identified data/resource gap  | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i>   |
|---------------|---|---|
| <b>1a</b>     | Information on distribution of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> throughout its range.       | Understanding the distribution of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide a valuable indication of the presence of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (and other species), especially where targeted boat-based cetaceans surveys to document the distribution of cetaceans are not (yet) possible. Given the paucity of records (live or dead) of the species throughout its range, more coordinated efforts to document and confirm the species identification of stranded and bycaught carcasses may yield insight into the species presence in previously undocumented locations and/or highlight potential bycatch hotspots where conservation interventions are urgently required.</li> </ul> |
| <b>1b</b>     | Human-induced causes of mortality (e.g., poaching, entanglement, vessel strike) | Understanding the human-induced causes of mortality for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide a better understanding of the type and scale of anthropogenic threats to the species, for which mitigating actions could then be implemented.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>2</b>      | Reproduction  | Understanding reproduction for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide valuable baseline reproductive behavior, seasonality, and statistical data needed for population modelling and to make informed conservation management and field research decisions (e.g., age at first parturition, calving interval, etc.)</li> </ul>   |
| <b>3</b>      | Common Diseases   | Understanding diseases for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for an understanding of the health threats facing this species, to include the health consequences of individual and cumulative stressors on animals.</li> <li>• Provide insight into zoonotic disease risks associated with this species.</li> </ul>  |

|          |  |   |
|----------|--|---|
| <b>4</b> | Toxin/Contaminant Exposure               | <p>Understanding the toxin and contaminant exposure for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for an understanding of how toxins and contaminants are impacting overall health (e.g., immune system impairments, increased susceptibility to infectious disease) of individual animals and populations.</li> <li>• Allow comparisons of population exposure to toxins/contaminants associated with differing socio-economic pressures on the marine environment, which could inform prioritization of conservation and mitigation actions.</li> <li>• Provide insight into potential health concerns for people living and working within the target region.</li> </ul> |
| <b>5</b> | Nutrition (prey preference etc.)         | <p>Understanding nutrition for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide an understanding of nutritional needs of the species;</li> <li>• Identify key prey species that may better inform habitat and distribution modelling, and increase overall understanding of species occurrence and hotspots.</li> <li>• Determine if evidence of nutritional disorders and/or malnutrition is present;</li> <li>• Provide insight into the impacts of fisheries and depleted food sources on overall conservation efforts.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>6</b> | Biology & Natural History                | <p>Understanding the basic biology and natural history of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide basic biological information (e.g., skeletal samples, age estimation, morphometrics, parasites, etc.)</li> </ul>  |
| <b>7</b> | Genetic Health of Individual Populations | <p>Understanding the genetic health for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will (see also the outputs from WG4 on genetics):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide understanding of genetic diversity as it relates to population resilience and conservation management decisions.</li> <li>• Help with assessing risks for specific populations to facilitate appropriate targeting for research.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>8</b> | Cell Preservation and Gamete Rescue      | <p>Cell preservation and gamete rescue for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p>   |

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
|  |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assess cryopreservation options for the long-term safeguarding of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> cell lines, oocytes, and sperm in established frozen collections or 'cryobanks'. These collections can serve as crucial resources for facilitating advances in genetic and reproductive technologies for population sustainability.</li> </ul> |
|--|--|--|

| Data/resource gap - Priority rank 1: <i>ALL</i>   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <p>Since the available methods and approaches to addressing dead animal knowledge gaps are the same, the data gaps have been ranked together as Priority rank #1. The incorporated data gaps include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1a. <i>Sousa teuszii</i> distribution</li> <li>1b. Human-Induced Causes of Mortality</li> <li>2. Reproduction</li> <li>3. Common Diseases</li> <li>4. Toxin/Contaminant Exposure</li> <li>5. Nutrition</li> <li>6. Biology and Natural History</li> <li>7. Genetic Health of Individual Populations</li> <li>8. Cell Preservation and Gamete Rescue</li> </ol> |  |   |
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:  |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1. Retrospective data review.</b> Review of previously collected data from all available sources, including photos and stranding data. A complete literature review should also be performed.</li> <li><b>2. Establishment of reporting networks.</b> Stranding network mobilization in the appropriate range states. Efforts should include: the identification of laboratories and storage facilities, community outreach, and establishing a network of local personnel on whom to focus training and capacity-building.</li> <li><b>3. Production of training material and sampling protocols.</b> Provision of in-country training and necropsy demonstrations, or attendance of local personnel on equivalent courses held by established organisations in other countries. Production of tiered sampling protocols to apply under a range of available resources and logistics, from a basic tissue/morphological sampling protocol to an advanced necropsy protocol.</li> <li><b>4. Necropsy sample collection, storage and analysis.</b> Provision of sampling kits containing the necessary equipment to collect and</li> </ol> |

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <p>store samples to fill knowledge gaps, with prioritized sample lists for the most important data gaps.</p> <p><b>5. Advanced imaging (e.g., x-ray, computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging).</b> Advanced imaging of carcasses to help fill data gaps (e.g., aging data from pectoral flipper x-ray, detailed health and trauma information from all modalities).</p>   |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, its habitats and range state logistics:</p> | <p><b>1. Review of any available retrospective data.</b> Available data are limited, so achievability is high if personnel are funded to aid with the task. The most likely constraint will be locating and centralizing any available data.</p> <p><b>2. Establishment of reporting networks.</b> Achievability is variable depending on range state and geographic region selected. Achievability is possible but this is a significant effort that will require extensive interdisciplinary and range state cooperation (the CCAHD is already progressing the identification of local contacts which may facilitate this). Possible constraints include range state logistics, centralized coordination, appropriate training, sustained funding, and response time in challenging locations.</p> <p><b>3. Production of training material and sampling protocols.</b> A shorter term, and highly feasible action that will support the establishment of effective reporting network is the development and dissemination of clear manuals and protocols for stranding response, necropsy and sample collection. These should be available in the target languages of the region (English, French and Portuguese at a minimum), and should include: data collection forms, equipment lists to include in stranding/sampling kits, clearly illustrated diagrams of how to measure and sample carcasses, label and store samples, etc. In many countries, wildlife rangers or veterinarians are highly experienced at conducting this kind of work with terrestrial wildlife, and in-country expertise could be used to help train those working in marine and coastal settings.</p> <p><b>4. Necropsy sample collection and analysis.</b> Achievability is variable depending on range state and geographic region selected. Other possible constraints include funding, equipment and training availability, laboratory storage challenges, and response time.</p> <p><b>5. Advanced imaging.</b> Achievability is low due to extensive cost and likely inaccessibility of needed equipment. This is not an essential task so it is listed last, however still included as a potential method to fill data gaps.</p> |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single</p>  | <p><b>(a) Short/medium-term (&lt;2 years):</b> 1) Review of any available retrospective data. 2) Additionally, it is recommended a stranding reporting network is established in the most accessible and appropriate range states, followed by additional locations as deemed appropriate by in-country experts and funding availability. 3) Development and dissemination of clear manuals and protocols for</p>   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>  | <p>stranding response, necropsy and sample collection. Materials can draw from those being developed and disseminated through existing initiatives, such as the Global Stranding Network (<a href="#">GSN</a>), the Global Marine Animal Stranding Toolkit (<a href="#">GMAST</a>), and other stranding and necropsy initiatives in Africa and the Indian Ocean. Materials can be disseminated through the <a href="#">Sousateuszii.org</a> website. All aspects as outlined above, should be included in this effort, to include significant in-country training. Once in place, prioritized sample collection can commence.</p> <p><b>(b) Longer-term (&gt;2 years):</b> Establishment of additional stranding networks, where feasible and continued collection, analysis, and storage of necessary samples to fill data gaps.</p>  |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(i)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The estimated cost to perform retrospective review of sample analysis is small to moderate.</li> <li>2. The development of suitable manuals and protocols should be possible at a small or moderate cost. Many materials are available in both English and French. CCAHD members could adapt existing materials so that they are appropriate for use in <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range states, and make them available through the <a href="#">sousateuszii.org</a> website. Funding could be obtained to cover the personnel time to develop these manuals, and to have them professionally formatted and translated. Ideally they would also include embedded hyperlinks to videos demonstrating best practice.</li> <li>3. The cost to set up a reporting network will be moderate to high depending on how large of an area is selected, how much training is required, and the equipment and supplies that are needed. Basic set up could begin at a lower cost, and the effort could be built out once additional funding was provided.</li> </ol> <p>(ii) Key resources include experienced multi-lingual personnel for the review of available retrospective data. Incorporation of local participation is essential through engagement of local students, veterinarians, scientists, research assistants, fishers, government wildlife agents, and other community members. Core resources and equipment needed for the establishment of a reporting network include, but are not limited to: 1) experienced personnel with knowledge of in-country range state logistics to help aid in organization and coordination of such an effort; 2) health/necropsy experienced personnel to help guide sample protocol</p> |



|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <p>development, diagnostic assay development, equipment needs, and training;<br/>3) response kits to include manuals, sampling equipment, sample storage needs, availability of transportation to field sites.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any co-funding or donations in kind.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Species identification cards have been developed free of charge by Uko Gorter. Many CCHAD members have access to, or have helped to develop training materials and manuals that can be adapted for use in the region.</li> <li>(b) African Aquatic Conservation Fund can provide personnel and support logistics for dead animal response and sampling in Senegal.</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

## A8. Working Group 6 Full Report: Interview Surveys

| Background  |
|---|
| What is already known/available for your WG Target with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?   |
| <p>Working Group Targets: Working Group 4 was tasked with assessing the following target identified by Weir et al. (2020):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2.5. Assessments of occurrence in other potential range states via interview surveys</li> <li>• 3.2. Conduct interview surveys to identify other populations for which specific population-level threats likely exist</li> </ul> <p>Note: The current information on the distribution, current areas of occurrence, knowledge gaps and areas with no confirmed records, as well as documented threats and areas where information on threats are lacking are all described in detail in the <i>Sousa teuszii</i> Red List assessment and references therein and this information is not replicated here (Collins et al. 2017). We focus on providing some targeted background on the use of local ecological knowledge to inform species conservation planning.</p> <p>Background</p> <p>Local ecological knowledge (LEK), representing experiential knowledge derived from lived human interactions with local environments, can provide information about the status of species and ecological resources that is often unavailable from other sources. LEK is increasingly seen as an important source of data for conservation, especially for distinctive large-bodied vertebrates and/or species with socio-economic or cultural importance, and community interview surveys represent a relatively inexpensive approach for collecting comparative data across wide areas on species otherwise difficult to study (Turvey et al. 2015). Robust ecological data to make evidence-based management decisions is frequently prevented by limited data quantity or quality, and LEK can be an important source of information to fill these gaps (Turvey et al. 2015).</p> <p>Interviews to gather information on LEK have been used to answer important conservation questions for a large number of species in many parts of the world, such as finding strongholds for the Critically Endangered saola <i>Pseudoryx nghetinhensis</i> in Laos (Turvey et al. 2015), local relative abundance of the Chinese giant pangolin <i>Manis pentadactyla</i> in China (Nash et al. 2015) (demonstrated as the proportion of people that recognise a species), and a comparative assessment of the relative status of Critically Endangered Chinese giant salamander <i>Andrias davidianus</i> in China (Pan et al. 2015). In Hainan, China, LEK was used to gather information on the Hainan gibbon (<i>Nomascus hainanus</i>) with results tested using relatively common</p> |

macaques as a positive control to assess the effectiveness of using LEK to provide information on the regional status of primates (Turvey et al. 2017). Analysis of last-sighting histories can constitute an important conservation tool when robust data on a species decline are otherwise unavailable, and for example, on the Yangtze, last sighting dates were used very effectively to establish the temporal and spatial extinction dynamics of the baiji *Lipotes vexillifer* (Turvey et al. 2010) and to detect the drivers of that decline (Turvey et al. 2013). In West Africa, the forest hingeback tortoises *Kinixys homeana* and *Kinixys erosa* are two of the most threatened African chelonians and LEK interviews showed that both species are declining and are targeted in the bush meat trade (Lusielli et al. 2018).

LEK for marine mammals has also been used in a number of cases and situations. LEK has been extensively utilised for gathering information on presence, hunting and bycatch of dugongs throughout their range (Hines et al. 2005, 2008, Ilangakoon et al. 2008, Pilcher et al. 2017). It was also used very effectively to evaluate artisanal hunting of dolphins in Madagascar (Cerchio et al. 2014, Cerchio et al. 2015) and also for exploring possible options and likely uptake for conservation measures at the community level (Teh et al. 2015). In West Africa, including in Cameroon, Guinea, Ghana, Gambia, Senegal, Nigeria and Togo and Guinea-Bissau, interviews and monitoring of fish landing sites and ports have been used to document cetacean species presence and bycatch occurrence (Ayissi et al. 2014, Bamy et al. 2010, Debrah et al. 2010, Leeney et al. 2015, Ofori-Dansen et al. 2019, Uwagbae & Van Wearebeek 2010, Van Wearebeek et al. 2017).

Species identification can be problematic for marine mammals, especially cetaceans which are often not seen clearly, however Lin et al. (2019) found that fishers could identify cetacean species groups, and validated the accuracy of the respondent data reported by fishers with data from stranded cetaceans, indicating that LEK can provide useful, quantitative information on abundance rankings of different cetacean categories (Lin et al. 2019). In many cases in West Africa fishers consistently could not distinguish between *Sousa teuszii* or *Tursiops aduncus* in interviews (Ayissi et al. 2014, Bamy et al. 2010). In Hainan, China LEK was used to evaluate the number, species, seasons and geographic hotspots of cetacean bycatch by asking fishers to mark bycatch locations on a 0.50 by 0.50 grid square (Liu et al. 2016).

In conclusion, surveys of LEK generated through interviews can provide invaluable information on presence, relative abundance, declines and threats of common or uncommon species that cannot be easily generated using other methods, however, to be effective the interviews need to be very carefully developed to ensure that the conservation questions of interest can be answered by the data that are generated. To accomplish this a pilot survey needs to be conducted to test and refine the questionnaires, training provided to interviewees and comprehensive data analyses and reporting conducted on the outputs.

#### References

Ayissi I, Segniagbeto GH, Van Waerebeek K. 2014. Rediscovery of Cameroon Dolphin, the Gulf of Guinea Population of *Sousa teuszii* (Kükenthal, 1892). ISRN Biodiversity, 2014: 819827.

- Bamy I, Van Waerebeek K, Bah S, Dia M, Kaba B, Keita N, Konate S. 2010. Species occurrence of cetaceans in Guinea, including humpback whales with southern hemisphere seasonality. *Marine Biodiversity Records*, 3. e48
- Cerchio, S., N. Andrianarivelo, B. Andrianantenaina, and V. Cordi. 2014. Ecology, status, fisheries interactions and conservation of coastal Indian Ocean humpback dolphins and Indo-Pacific bottlenose dolphins on the west coast of Madagascar. Paper SC/65B/SM21 presented to the International Whaling Commission Scientific Committee.
- Cerchio, S., N. Andrianarivelo, and B. Andrianantenaina. 2015. Ecology and conservation status of Indian Ocean humpback dolphins (*Sousa plumbea*) in Madagascar. Pages 163-199. *Advances in Marine Biology*. Elsevier.
- Collins, T., Braulik, G.T. & Perrin, W. 2017. *Sousa teuszii* (errata version published in 2018). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2017: e.T20425A123792572. <https://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2017-3.RLTS.T20425A50372734.en>. Downloaded on 27 November 2020.
- Debrah JS, Ofori-Danson PK, Van Waerebeek K. 2010. An update on the catch composition and other aspects of cetacean exploitation in Ghana. Paper SC/62/SM10 presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission, Agadir, Morocco.
- Hines, E., K. A. Anukosol, D. A. Duffus, and P. Dearden. 2005. Community perspectives and conservation needs for dugongs (*Dugong dugon*) along the Andaman Coast of Thailand. *Environmental Management* 36:654-664.
- Hines, E., K. Adulyanukosol, P. Somany, L. S. Ath, N. Cox, P. Boonyanate, and N. X. Hoa. 2008. Conservation needs of the dugong *Dugong dugon* in Cambodia and Phu Quoc Island, Vietnam. *Oryx* 42:113-121.
- Ilangakoon, A. D., D. Sutaria, E. Hines, and R. Raghavan. 2008. Community interviews on the status of the dugong (*Dugong dugon*) in the Gulf of Mannar (India and Sri Lanka). *Marine Mammal Science* 24:704-710.
- Leeney RH, Dia IM, Dia M. 2015. Food, Pharmacy, Friend? Bycatch, Direct Take and Consumption of Dolphins in West Africa. *Human Ecology*, 43: 105-118.
- Liu, M., M. Lin, S. T. Turvey, and S. Li. 2016. Fishers' knowledge as an information source to investigate bycatch of marine mammals in the South China Sea. *Animal Conservation*.
- Luiselli, L., D. Dendi, N. Pacini, N. Amadi, G. C. Akani, E. A. Eniang, and G. H. Ségniagbeto. 2018. Interviews on the status of West African forest tortoises (genus *Kinixys*), including preliminary data on the effect of snail gatherers on their trade. *Herpetological Journal* 28.
- Lin, M., L. Xing, L. Fang, S.-L. Huang, C.-J. Yao, S. T. Turvey, R. E. Gozlan, and S. Li. 2019. Can local ecological knowledge provide meaningful information on coastal cetacean diversity? A case study from the northern South China Sea. *Ocean & Coastal Management* 172:117-127
- Nash, H. C., M. H. Wong, and S. T. Turvey. 2016. Using local ecological knowledge to determine status and threats of the Critically Endangered Chinese pangolin (*Manis pentadactyla*) in Hainan, China. *Biological Conservation* 196:189-195.
- Ofori-Danson PK, Debrah J, Van Waerebeek K. 2019. The status and trends of small cetacean landings at Dixcove artisanal fishing port, western Ghana. *PeerJ Preprints*, 7: e27749v27741.
- Pan, Y., G. Wei, A. A. Cunningham, S. Li, S. Chen, E. J. Milner-Gulland, and S. T. Turvey. 2015. Using local ecological knowledge to assess the status of the Critically Endangered Chinese giant salamander *Andrias davidianus* in Guizhou Province, China. *Oryx* 50:257-264.

- Pilcher, N. J., K. Adulyanukosol, H. Das, P. Davis, E. Hines, D. Kwan, H. Marsh, L. Ponnampalam, and J. Reynolds. 2017. A low-cost solution for documenting distribution and abundance of endangered marine fauna and impacts from fisheries. *PLoS ONE* 12:e0190021.
- Teh, L. S. L., Teh, L. C. L., Hines, E., Junchompoo, C. and Lewison, R. L. 2015. Contextualising the coupled socio-ecological conditions of marine megafauna bycatch. *Ocean & Coastal Management* 116:449-465.
- Turvey, S. T., C. T. Trung, V. D. Quyet, H. V. Nhu, D. V. Thoai, V. C. A. Tuan, D. T. Hoa, K. Kacha, T. Sysomphone, S. Wallate, C. T. T. Hai, N. V. Thanh, and N. M. Wilkinson. 2015. Interview-based sighting histories can inform regional conservation prioritization for highly threatened cryptic species. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 52:422-433.
- Turvey, S. T., J. V. Bryant, C. Duncan, M. H. G. Wong, Z. Guan, H. Fei, C. Ma, X. Hong, H. C. Nash, B. P. L. Chan, Y. Xu, and P. Fan. 2017. How many remnant gibbon populations are left on Hainan? Testing the use of local ecological knowledge to detect cryptic threatened primates. *American Journal of Primatology* 79:e22593.
- Turvey, S. T., L. A. Barrett, T. Hart, B. Collen, H. Yujiang, Z. Lei, Z. Xinqiao, W. Xianyan, H. Yadong, Z. Kaiya, and W. Ding. 2010. Spatial and temporal extinction dynamics in a freshwater cetacean. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 277:3139-3147.
- Turvey, S. T., C. L. Risley, J. E. Moore, L. A. Barrett, H. Yujiang, Z. Xiujiang, Z. Kaiya, and W. Ding. 2013. Can local ecological knowledge be used to assess status and extinction drivers in a threatened freshwater cetacean? *Biological Conservation* 157:352-360.
- Uwagbae M, Van Waerebeek K. 2010. Initial evidence of dolphin takes in the Niger Delta region and a review of Nigerian cetaceans. IWC Scientific Committee document SC/62/SM1, Agadir, Morocco: 8.
- Van Waerebeek, K., Wagabae, M.U., Segniagbeto, G., Amy, I.L.B., Yissi, I.A. 2017. New records of Atlantic Humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*) in Guinea, Nigeria, Cameroon and Togo underscore pressure from fisheries and marine bushmeat demand. *Revue d'Ecologie (Terre et Vie)*, 72: 192-205.
- Weir, C., R. H. Leeney, and T. Collins. 2020. Reinvigorating conservation efforts for the Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*): A brief progress report. Document presented to the Scientific Committee of the International Whaling Commission SC/68B/SM/07:1-20.

### Identified data gaps

**Working Group 6** used a shared Google Sheet to prioritise and rank the importance to conservation of the specific metrics that local ecological knowledge interviews can generate. These metrics, shown below, cover both Targets 2.5 (presence and occurrence) and 3.2 (threats) and although these are prioritised in order of importance it is envisaged that with a well-designed survey, combined with a strategically implemented and reviewed pilot survey, all of the items on the list could be generated by a single comprehensive interview campaign in multiple range states. A second exercise was conducted to rank the priority geographic areas for local ecological knowledge interviews to be conducted.

| Priority rank | Local Ecological Knowledge based data generated from interviews | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> |
|---------------|---|---|
|---------------|---|---|

|          |   |  |
|----------|---|--|
| <b>1</b> | <i>Sousa teuszii</i> presence /absence (Target 2.5)       | Would fill knowledge gaps in confirmed range states with few records (e.g. Nigeria, Togo), those with no recent records (e.g. Ghana), and in countries that are unconfirmed potential range states (e.g. Sierra Leone), to establish presence and distribution. Confirming species presence in additional range states would encourage more direct buy-in to conservation measures from stakeholders within those countries.   |
| <b>2</b> | Bycatch hotspots (Target 3.2)                             | This would generate vitally important information regarding which countries and locations in the range of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> have the highest levels of bycatch, as well as generating data on the types of gear, fishing method, or season that is most problematic for the species, thereby providing information that will help in formulating strategies to address the problem. An add-on to this would involve characterizing the fisheries involved in bycatch, including fishing effort, gear configuration, target catch, income from fisheries, and opportunities for switching to alternative gears or alternative livelihoods. |
| <b>3</b> | Relative abundance and distribution hotspots (Target 2.5) | This would fill an extremely important gap in knowledge regarding which places have concentrations of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> . Using standard interview methods in all countries will allow for a comparison at both national and regional levels and enable identification of the most important places for future population assessment fieldwork and potential interventions.   |
| <b>4</b> | Prevalence of hunting / consumption (Target 3.2)          | As for point 2, recognizing that this is a sensitive topic, by asking carefully formulated and indirect questions it should be possible to gain an understanding of the local perceptions towards <i>Sousa teuszii</i> and to what degree they are directly targeted and utilized, information that is critical to mitigating impacts, and to understanding trends in abundance and designing outreach activities.   |

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 5 | Trends in relative abundance over time | Inferences about trends in relative abundance of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> over time can be made from evidence such as shifting baselines of knowledge and last sighting date generated from community interviews and this can help to understand population trajectories, areas for restoration and historical hotspots.  |
| 6 | Evaluation of threats (Target 3.2)     | In addition to hunting and bycatch covered above, community interviews can shed light on the relative importance and prevalence of a wide variety of different local and more ubiquitous threats (e.g. pollution, shipping, coastal development etc.) and their relative importance which is information vital to addressing those threats. Participatory mapping of fishing effort and threats with communities is a useful approach to include. |

| Recommended action for all data gaps combined  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:               | <p>The 6 Data Gaps identified above can be addressed using a single interview that is carefully designed to answer each question. There will be several phases to the work:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Identifying the questions that need to be answered and drafting the questionnaire</li> <li>2. Pilot the questionnaire in at least two places, at least one where <i>Sousa teuszii</i> are known to be relatively common and another where information is lacking.</li> <li>3. In light of information in the pilot refine the questionnaire.</li> <li>4. Analyse frame surveys to understand national fisheries and carefully identify the target group for interviews in terms of which fishery, fishing method, village and demographic should be the focus in each country that interviews will be conducted.</li> <li>5. Roll out the interview surveys in as many <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range states as possible, keeping in mind the geographic priorities identified by the working group.</li> </ol> |  |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely | <p><u>Achievability:</u> Collection of LEK on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> to fill the key datagaps (Target 2.5 &amp; 3.2) is relatively easily achievable and low cost compared to many other interventions proposed in the conservation strategy. This work is quite achievable for the following reasons:</p>  |  |



|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, it's habitats and range state logistics:</p>                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The amount of equipment required to conduct surveys of LEK is minimal.</li> <li>• There are many west African people with experience in conducting interview surveys and it is possible to train local researchers and students to conduct them.</li> <li>• Interview surveys, even over relatively large areas are not costly undertakings because the main cost is transport and the time of the interview team.</li> <li>• There are many precedents of cases where LEK interviews have been used to generate the information that we are interested in to fill the same kinds of datagaps and therefore the methodology is tried and tested.</li> </ul> <p><u>Constraints:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The range of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> is vast, covering numerous countries, and it will be challenging in terms of man power and finances to conduct interviews simultaneously everywhere. A phased approach is likely to be most practical</li> <li>• Difficulty in distinguishing between <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, and <i>Tursiops truncatus</i> or other small delphinids means that it may be very challenging to generate species specific information from LEK. Interviews will need to be designed from the outset to specifically try to use creative methods to test the respondents ability to differentiate the two species, and to allow for the generation of meaningful and useful information if the majority cannot.</li> <li>• It needs to be recognised that obtaining quantitative or factual data on hunting activities or consumption is likely to be very challenging from a single interview survey. To obtain information on illegal activities such as this may require a longer term approach using trusted informants.</li> <li>• There may be challenges during analysis of comparing interviews conducted in different countries by different teams that make detecting regional differences in threats or relative abundance challenging.</li> <li>• Some coastal regions have poor access and transport and some important fishing communities might be largely inaccessible by road.</li> <li>• Security constraints in some insecure areas making access challenging or safety a concern.</li> <li>• Potential challenges obtaining permits in some places</li> </ul> |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single</p> | <p><u>Short/Medium Term Priority Activity &lt;2 years</u></p> <p><b>Design and Initiate LEK surveys in priority locations</b></p> <p>LEK Interview surveys are an activity that can be conducted relatively quickly and can be started without a long time lag and may be one of the first</p>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>  | <p>activities conducted in a place for which there is little information on <i>Sousa teuszii</i>. In the short-term the following activities are recommended:</p> <p><u>Year 1</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Produce a draft questionnaire and circulate for input from experts</li> <li>2. Identify three discrete locations (for example a single province in three countries) where the interviews can be piloted</li> <li>3. Conduct joint training of all three teams in use of the interview</li> <li>4. Conduct pilot survey</li> <li>5. Interview teams to reconvene together to discuss short-comings and improvements to the questionnaire</li> <li>6. Analysis of pilot survey data output to identify whether it is answering the important conservation questions</li> <li>7. Refinement of the questionnaire and finalization</li> </ol> <p><u>Year 2</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. Joint training of all interview teams in the refined questionnaire</li> <li>9. Conduct of full interview survey across the entire coastline of above three countries</li> <li>10. Data analysis of these surveys including national level analyses and comparative regional level analyses</li> </ol> <p><u>Longer Term Activity &gt;2 years</u></p> <p><b>Roll-out LEK surveys in all range states</b></p> <p>Identify new range states to conduct interviews according to the <a href="#">geographic priorities identified by the Working Group</a> and following the above Year 2 strategy of identifying implementing organisations, conducting training, conducting the survey, and conducting national level and regional level comparative analyses.</p> |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind</p> | <p><u>Short-term budget</u></p> <p>Interview surveys are generally not as costly as some other forms of survey including boat-based expeditions. For the Short/medium term actions described above in 3a the budget in each country is likely to be &lt;10K USD to accomplish all the activities stated.</p> <p><u>Key resources/ equipment</u></p> <p>To accomplish this action the key resources include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transport for interview team</li> <li>• Accommodation and food for interview team</li> <li>• Laptop for entering data</li> </ul>   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Camera</li> <li>• Clipboards, pencils and questionnaires</li> <li>• GPS to record interview locations</li> <li>• Recording device to record interviews for later transcription</li> <li>• Payment to interview team</li> <li>• Payment to analytical team</li> <li>• Production of identification material</li> <li>• Education and awareness material to gift to communities in return for their time completing interviews</li> </ul> <p><u>Co-funding or donations</u></p> <p>Possibly assistance from ZSL in designing and analysing the questionnaire?</p> <p>Mapping of data assistance from Ellen Hines at San Francisco State University. Co-financing may be available from the International Whaling Commission bycatch initiative.</p> |
|--|--|

## A9. Working Group 7 Full Report: Preparing for Full Health Assessments

### Background

What is already known/available for your WG Target with regard to *Sousa teuszii* (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?

**Working Group Target:** WG7 aimed to discuss and identify priorities for the following target (Weir & Collins, 2020):

- *Target 2.6 - Carry Out Preliminary Work that will Inform Future Health Assessments and Invasive Work*

### Background

A recent report published by the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN), sounds the alarm for a broader, more integrated approach to the conservation of at-risk small cetaceans (Taylor et al., 2020). This report highlights *Sousa teuszii as one of the seven species of small cetaceans of greatest concern*, with an urgent recommendation for community based research to fill knowledge gaps on geographic distribution, animal abundance, and threats to species survival (Taylor et al., 2020). The extinction of the Yangtze River dolphin in China, and the catastrophic decline of the vaquita porpoise in Mexico, were noted as examples of why waiting too long to consider all conservation options should be avoided (Taylor et al., 2020). An integrated approach includes consideration for all measures and strategies that might expedite the saving of a species. Successful execution of this approach has occurred historically with many terrestrial and avian species, as well as with the Yangtze Finless Porpoise in China (Taylor et al., 2020). This methodology, referred to as the “One Plan Approach”, provides a holistic consideration of all *in-situ* threats and efforts, as well as *ex-situ* options for species conservation (Taylor et al., 2020). *Ex-situ* options constitute a wide spectrum of activities, that can include rescue and rehabilitation of stranded individuals; research programs involving the temporary capture, satellite-linked tagging, release, and tracking of animals; veterinary health assessments; translocation efforts; and the use of *in-situ* reserves for the safeguarding of individuals.

The IUCN report stressed the importance of collecting the data that would be required to assess the feasibility and risks of different *ex-situ* activities, before population numbers are critically low (Taylor et al., 2020). Addressing identified data gaps will provide species experts and conservation managers with the necessary tools to act as efficiently as possible and will increase the chances of success.

To date, no hands-on health assessment work of any nature has been conducted with live *Sousa teuszii*, and only minimally with other *Sousa* species (Taylor et al., 2020). *Sousa teuszii* is the least studied of the four *Sousa* species, with limited natural history and ecological information available (Taylor et al., 2020). Additionally, very few individuals of any *Sousa* species have been maintained in managed care settings (Parra & Ross, 2009; Taylor et al., 2020), where baseline health data such as expected respiratory rates, heart rates, blood ranges,

and response to handling and medications, are often collected. As such, very little is known about *Sousa* species, including their health and species-specific responses to human handling and treatment.

Live animal sampling methodologies include remote biopsy sampling; capture, tag, and release efforts; and capture-release health assessments. These are well documented methods used over decades for safe data gathering for many small cetaceans, and although not without risk, these operations provide valuable information including critical data for species conservation. Ensuring extensive experience, well-trained teams and the use of established protocols that prioritize animal welfare, will effectively minimize and mitigate potential risks. Additionally, it is recommended these efforts take place in sites where long-term studies are occurring, making follow-up monitoring feasible. Although not expected, this will allow for detection of possible long-term effects of any efforts, as well as integration of data into larger datasets.

Small vessel-based, remote biopsy dart sampling is a safe, effective, and efficient tool to collect tissue samples from small cetaceans and can provide critical data on sex determination, population structure, genetic information, reproductive and stress hormone concentrations, environmental contaminant concentrations, percent lipids as an indication of nutritive condition, age determination, diet information from stable isotopes and fatty acids, and cell line preservation (e.g., Sellas et al., 2005; Kellar et al., 2006, 2009, 2015; Balmer et al. 2011; Beal et al. 2019; Bors et al. 2020). Following individuals to evaluate appropriate and expected skin healing post-biopsy, and to identify reproductive outcomes are also important outputs. Follow-up monitoring, post remote biopsy sampling, has been conducted across numerous species and study sites to evaluate short and long-term impacts to this minimally invasive sampling technique (e.g. Gorgone, Haase, Griffith, & Hohn, 2008; Noren & Mocklin, 2012; Tezanos-Pinto & Baker, 2012; Weller, Cockcroft, Würsig, Lynn, & Fertl, 1997). For the majority of sampling efforts, there has been no evidence for any chronic, long-term impacts associated with remote sampling. Potential complications include injuries from striking dolphins with the darts outside of the target zone, and secondary infections of the sampling site. There is one published case in the literature that identified remote biopsy as a factor in a sampled animal's mortality. Bearzi (2000) reported the mortality of a common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) shortly after (16 min) a remote sampling attempt. The cause of mortality was hypothesized to be in part a result of sampling an animal with poor body condition.

While complications were extremely rare in the many thousands of biopsy dart samplings that have occurred over decades of field efforts with small cetaceans around the world, this would be of greater potential concern in areas where the waters are contaminated. In an effort to reduce the potential for secondary infections, thorough water testing prior to sampling efforts is recommended. The most effective approach to minimizing risk however, is using well-trained teams with clean instruments and appropriate dart dimensions. Risks of physical injury from inaccurate darting or inadvertent strikes of unintended dolphins can be reduced through the use of a highly experienced team, appropriate equipment, and comprehensive sampling protocols that have been established over the past two decades. Although remote biopsy sampling is considered to be an extremely safe and effective tool for developing a better understanding of small cetacean health and population structure, researchers should have an in-depth discussion to determine if this tool is the appropriate fit to address a given research question. In addition, a standardized methodology should be developed, taking into account the target species' anatomy (e.g., blubber depth including possible seasonal

variations) and behavior (e.g., level of vessel avoidance) as well as environmental factors (e.g., water clarity). These parameters are essential for determining dart velocity, cutterhead depth, and other factors to ensure that animal welfare is the highest priority and remote sampling is conducted as safely as possible for a given individual/population/species.

Techniques for safely catching small cetaceans, including for tagging and health assessments, have been used with a variety of species, and have been refined over decades of application (Asper, 1975; Loughlin et al., 2010). Species for which seine net encirclement catch-and-release techniques were used successfully include bottlenose dolphins (Barratclough et al., 2019; Schwacke et al., 2014), Yangtze finless porpoises (Hao et al., 2009; Nabi, Hao, McLaughlin, & Wang, 2018; Nabi, Hao, Zeng, Jinsong, et al., 2017; Nabi, Hao, Zeng, & Wang, 2017; Wang et al., 2020), Amazon river dolphins (Martin & Da Silva, 2018) and franciscana dolphins (Wells, Bordino, & Douglas, 2013). Potential risks and considerations include entanglement; capture myopathy (a stress response seen in some individuals or species resulting in physiological decompensation), and maintenance of overall animal stability and responsiveness once under human care. Mitigation strategies include staffing with experienced personnel for all catch and health assessment efforts, application of comprehensive, well-established protocols, analyzing relevant species-specific data prior to efforts where possible (e.g., use of habitats conducive to safe seine net encirclement, behavior around nets, normal respiratory rates, etc.), and moving forward in a stepwise, incremental fashion where feasible (e.g., starting with remote biopsy darting prior to catching animals). In general, larger species of small cetaceans tend to be more tractable for catch-and-release work – *Sousa* would fall into this category.

Potential data outputs from capture, tag, and release efforts include ascertaining animal response to physical restraint and handling, including changes to respiratory rate and heart rate, both of which help veterinarians determine animal stability. This methodology also provides the possibility of tracking an animal's movement post-handling through satellite telemetry, providing valuable information on the individual's range, 3-dimensional habitat use, and daily patterns of movements, as well as survival post-release. Short-term acoustic recording tags (DTAGs) can also be applied, allowing assessment of call rates and vocal behaviour that would better inform acoustic monitoring work (Nowacek et al., 1998; see WG8). Health assessments are an extended version of these capture-release efforts, and include a standard suite of veterinary examination, diagnostics, measurements, and sampling. Potential data outputs from these efforts are extensive, including comprehensive individual and population health evaluations through full physical exams and associated diagnostics (Barratclough et al., 2019; Schwacke et al., 2014). Sampling during these efforts can be targeted to answer species-specific research questions. Although not the focus of this document, should more extensive hands-on operations such as translocations in relation to *ex situ* operations be deemed necessary in the future, catch-and-release live animal sampling experiences provide veterinarians and scientists with invaluable knowledge regarding species-specific responses to strandings, incidental captures, handling, transport, and care.

#### **Assessment of data gaps**

Target 2.6 was identified by Weir and Collins (2020) in an effort to inform evaluation of whether it is justifiable to:

1. Sample from live *Sousa teuszii* using remote biopsy techniques
2. Capture *Sousa teuszii* for satellite-linked tagging, veterinary health assessment, and/or translocation efforts

Although the goal of the group was to identify knowledge gaps that could help to inform future live animal sampling, there was first a need to identify the general health and veterinary data gaps that exist for *Sousa teuszii*. In order to apply an integrated approach to conservation management, where all strategies are considered, as much baseline, background data as possible is needed. These data are important for the general understanding of the health and well-being of individuals and the population as a whole, as well as for any potential live animal sampling or handling experiences. As a starting point, WG7 identified health data gaps and ranked them (Table 1). Potential methodologies for filling these data gaps were also explored at length.

Following this exercise, it was necessary to refine this ranking in order to satisfy *Target 2.6 - Carry Out Preliminary Work that will Inform Future Health Assessments and Invasive Work*. Gomez, Smith, and Wells convened as live animal sampling and veterinary health assessment experts, to rank this list more specifically for preparation for this type of work (Table 2). Relevance for each data gap was also reexamined with Target 2.6 as the focus and listed in Table 2. Since preparation rather than implementation was the goal of WG7, our focus for the remainder of the document is on the data gaps as prioritized in Table 2. Short-term and long-term goals are outlined below.

In an effort to start to fill the many data gaps for *Sousa teuszii* with regards to this working group target, we recommend data collection in a stepwise approach when possible, from least invasive to more hands on. Although a stepwise approach to data collection is ideal, with the pressure of imminent species decline, we caution against attempting to fill all data gaps before moving forward with urgent, necessary actions. Filling all data gaps will take decades and with increasing anthropogenic threats, *Sousa teuszii* may not have this kind of time. If deemed appropriate by species and conservation specialists, moving rapidly from retrospective and opportunistic data gathering, to more active data collection is recommended before population numbers are critically low. Monitoring of population trends can potentially be achieved via methods including interview surveys (WG6) and scientific field studies (WG3), and would be important for informing this process.

The group also strongly recommends a community-based approach to all efforts as outlined below, with a focus on local capacity building through training in association with ongoing field programs. All activities requiring non-local expertise, should be paired with the training of local scientists, veterinarians, and research assistants so knowledge is actively passed on and in-country capacity building occurs real-time.

## References

Asper, E.D. (1975). Techniques of live capture of smaller Cetacea. *Journal of the Fisheries Board of Canada* 32, 1191-1196.



- Balmer, B. C., L. H. Schwacke, R. S. Wells, R. C. George, J. Hogue, J. R. Kucklick, S. M. Lane, A. Martinez, W. A. McLellan, P. E. Rosel, T. K. Rowles, K. Sparks, T. Speakman, E. S. Zolman, and D. A. Pabst. 2011. Relationship between persistent organic pollutants (POPs) and ranging patterns in common bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) from coastal Georgia, USA. *Science of The Total Environment* **409**:2094-2101.
- Barratclough, A., Wells, R. S., Schwacke, L. H., Rowles, T. K., Gomez, F. M., Fauquier, D. A., . . . Zolman, E. S. (2019). Health Assessments of Common Bottlenose Dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*): Past, Present, and Potential Conservation Applications. *Front. Vet. Sci.* **6**: 444. doi: 10.3389/fvets.
- Bearzi, G. (2000). First report of a common dolphin (*Delphinus delphis*) death following penetration of a biopsy dart. *Journal of Cetacean Research and Management*, **2**(3), 217-222.
- Gorgone, A. M., Haase, P. A., Griffith, E. S., & Hohn, A. A. (2008). Modeling response of target and nontarget dolphins to biopsy darting. *Journal of Wildlife Management*, **72**, 926-932.
- Hao, Y.-J., Zhao, Q.-Z., Wu, H.-P., Chen, D.-Q., Gong, C., Li, L., & Wang, D. (2009). Physiological responses to capture and handling of free-ranging male Yangtze finless porpoises (*Neophocaena phocaenoides asiaeorientalis*). *Marine and Freshwater Behaviour and Physiology*, **42**(5), 315-327.
- Martin, A. R., & Da Silva, V. (2018). Reproductive parameters of the Amazon river dolphin or boto, *Inia geoffrensis* (Cetacea: Iniidae); an evolutionary outlier bucks no trends. *Biological Journal of the Linnean Society*, **123**(3), 666-676.
- Nabi, G., Hao, Y., McLaughlin, R. W., & Wang, D. (2018). The possible effects of high vessel traffic on the physiological parameters of the critically endangered Yangtze Finless Porpoise (*Neophocaena asiaeorientalis* ssp. *asiaeorientalis*). *Frontiers in Physiology*, **9**, 1665.
- Nabi, G., Hao, Y., Zeng, X., Jinsong, Z., McLaughlin, R. W., & Wang, D. (2017). Hematologic and biochemical differences between two free ranging Yangtze finless porpoise populations: The implications of habitat. *PLoS One*, **12**(11), e0188570.
- Nabi, G., Hao, Y., Zeng, X., & Wang, D. (2017). Assessment of Yangtze finless porpoises (*Neophocaena asiaeorientalis*) through biochemical and hematological parameters. *Zoological Studies*, **56**.
- Noren, D. P., & Mocklin, J. A. (2012). Review of cetacean biopsy techniques: factors contributing to successful sample collection and physiological and behavioral impacts. *Marine Mammal Science*, **28**(1), 154-199.
- Parra, G. J., & Ross, G. J. (2009). Humpback dolphins: *S. chinensis* and *S. teuszii*. In *Encyclopedia of marine mammals* (pp. 576-582): Elsevier.
- Schwacke, L. H., Smith, C. R., Townsend, F. I., Wells, R. S., Hart, L. B., Balmer, B. C., . . . Guillette Jr, L. J. (2014). Health of common bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) in Barataria Bay, Louisiana, following the Deepwater Horizon oil spill. *Environ Sci Technol*, **48**(1), 93-103.
- Taylor, B. L., Abel, G., Miller, P., Gomez, F., Fersen, L. v., DeMaster, D., . . . Cipriano, F. (2020). Ex situ options for cetacean conservation. *Occasional Paper of the IUCN Species Survival Commission*(66).

Tezanos-Pinto, G., & Baker, C. (2012). Short-term reactions and long-term responses of bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) to remote biopsy sampling. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research*, 46(1), 13-29.

Wang, Z.-T., Li, J., Duan, P.-X., Mei, Z.-G., Niu, F.-Q., Akamatsu, T., . . . Chen, Y.-W. (2020). Evoked-potential audiogram variability in a group of wild Yangtze finless porpoises (*Neophocaena asiaeorientalis asiaeorientalis*). *Journal of Comparative Physiology A*, 1-15.

Weir, C. R., & Collins, T. (2020). Potential short- and medium-term targets for the conservation of *Sousa teuszii*. *Consortium for the Conservation of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin*.

Weller, D. W., Cockcroft, V., Würsig, B., Lynn, S. K., & Fertl, D. C. (1997). Behavioural responses of bottlenose dolphins to remote biopsy sampling and observations of surgical biopsy wound healing. *Aquatic Mammals*, 23, 49-58.

Wells, R. S., Bordino, P., & Douglas, D. C. (2013). Patterns of social association in the franciscana, *Pontoporia blainvillei*. *Marine Mammal Science*, 29(4), E520-E528.

## Identifying priority conservation management data gaps

Please list and rank these in the Table according to their perceived importance for achieving conservation and management outcomes.

**Table 1: General health and veterinary data gaps**

Filling these knowledge gaps is a broad effort that will aid in the general conservation of *Sousa teuszii*.

| Priority rank | Identified data/resource gap   | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i>  |
|---------------|--|--|
| 1             | Biology and Natural History (e.g. species-specific behavior, ranging patterns, habitat use, activity patterns, group dynamics, communication, morphometrics, etc.) | Understanding the basic biology and natural history for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide basic biological, ecological, and behavioral information needed to make informed conservation management decisions;</li> <li>• Provide basic biological, ecological, and behavioral information needed to care for individual animals during short-term (e.g., animal stranding, veterinary health assessments) and long-term care situations (e.g., translocations).</li> </ul> |
| 2             | Reproduction   | Understanding reproduction for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide valuable baseline reproductive behavior, seasonality, and statistical data</li> </ul>   |

|          |   |   |
|----------|---|---|
|          |   | needed to make informed conservation management decisions.  |
| <b>3</b> | Environmental Conditions (e.g., water quality, substrate, salinity, currents, depth, seasonal and tidal fluctuations, etc.) | <p>Understanding environmental conditions for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for an understanding of water quality in target areas, providing insight into health concerns for animals and people involved in any future live animal sampling or health assessment efforts, and potential impacts on skin healing following remote or in-hand biopsy;</li> <li>• Allow for a better understanding of the natural environmental requirements for the species;</li> <li>• Provide an understanding of the environmental conditions in relation to any future tagging and capture efforts.</li> </ul> |
| <b>4</b> | Nutrition (e. g., prey preference, etc.)  | <p>Understanding prey preferences and availability for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for an understanding of nutritional needs for the species;</li> <li>• Provide insight into the impacts of fisheries and depleted food sources on conservation efforts.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>5</b> | Anthropogenic Sources of Scarring/Injury  | <p>Understanding the anthropogenic sources of scarring for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide a better understanding of anthropogenic threats to the species;</li> <li>• Provide insight into behavior around nets, boats, etc.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>6</b> | Common Diseases   | <p>Understanding common diseases for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for an understanding of the health threats facing this species;</li> <li>• Allow for identification of infectious threats that could result in epizootic outbreaks and loss of larger numbers of animals;</li> <li>• Provide insight into zoonotic concerns for people potentially handling this species in the future.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>7</b> | Toxin/Contaminant Exposure  | <p>Understanding the toxin and contaminant exposure for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for an understanding of how toxins and contaminants may impact this species;</li> </ul>   |

|           |  |   |
|-----------|--|---|
|           |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide insight into potential health concerns for people handling this species in the future.</li> </ul>  |
| <b>8</b>  | Genetic Health of Individual Populations                                   | <p>Understanding the genetic health for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide understanding of genetic diversity as it relates to population resilience and conservation management decisions.</li> <li>• Help with assessing risks for specific populations to facilitate appropriate targeting for research.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>9</b>  | Response to Boats, Nets, Capture, and External Stimuli                     | <p>Understanding response to boats, nets, capture, and external stimuli for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide further understanding of the impact of boats and nets on species survival;</li> <li>• Allow for improved planning for any potential remote biopsy and/or temporary capture efforts. Improved understanding of vessel avoidance behavior etc.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>10</b> | Vital Physiological Statistics (respiratory rates, heart rates, etc.)      | <p>Understanding the vital physiological statistics for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for improved planning for any potential hands-on efforts;</li> <li>• Provide veterinarians with baseline information to help inform animal stability in real-time.</li> </ul>   |
| <b>11</b> | Medication and Drug Use (e.g., appropriate doses and documented responses) | <p>Understanding any previous medication and drug use for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide veterinarians with baseline medication information prior to any future animal care situations. If available, this can provide insight into species-specific responses to different medications and drugs and appropriate species-specific dosing in case veterinarians need to use medications in an animal handling or <i>ex-situ</i> scenario.</li> </ul> |
| <b>12</b> | Cell Preservation and Gamete Rescue  | <p>Cell preservation and gamete rescue for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assess cryopreservation options for the long-term safeguarding of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> cell lines, oocytes, and sperm in established frozen collections or 'cryobanks'. These collections can serve as crucial resources for facilitating advances in genetic and reproductive technologies for population sustainability.</li> </ul>  |

**Table 2: Live animal sampling and health assessment preparation data gaps (Target 2.6)**

This represents a more focused effort to rank knowledge gaps that are important for preparation for live animal sampling and veterinary health assessments. Priority 1-9 as listed here are described throughout the remainder of the document.

| Priority rank | Identified data/resource gap  | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i>   |
|---------------|---|---|
| 1             | Biology and Natural History (e.g. species-specific behavior, ranging patterns, habitat use, activity patterns, group dynamics, communication, morphometrics etc.) | Understanding the basic biology and natural history for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide basic information to aid in remote biopsy efforts;</li> <li>• Provide basic biological, ecological, and behavioral information needed to catch and care for individuals during short-term veterinary health assessments.</li> </ul>   |
| 2             | Environmental Conditions (e.g., water quality, substrate, salinity, currents, depth, seasonal and tidal fluctuations, etc.)                                       | Understanding the environmental conditions needed for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for an understanding of water quality in target areas, providing insight into health concerns for animals and people involved in any future live animal sampling or health assessment efforts, and potential impacts on skin healing following remote or in-hand biopsy;</li> <li>• Provide an understanding of the environmental conditions as they relate to any future tagging and capture efforts;</li> <li>• Knowledge of specific range state salinity levels, which can affect tag functionality;</li> <li>• Provide insight into health concerns for people involved in health assessment efforts.</li> </ul> |
| 3             | Reproduction  | Understanding reproduction for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide important information on mother/calf relationships prior to any future catch efforts;</li> <li>• Allow for improved planning for health assessment efforts through a better understanding of reproductive seasonality.</li> </ul>  |
| 4             | Response to Boats, Nets, Capture, External Stimuli  | Understanding the response to boats, nets, capture, and external stimuli for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for improved planning for any potential remote biopsy and/or temporary capture efforts. Improved understanding of vessel avoidance behavior etc.</li> </ul>  |

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 5 | Vital Physiological Statistics (e.g., respiratory rates, heart rates, etc.) | <p>Understanding the vital physiological statistics for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow for improved planning for remote biopsy and live animal health assessments;</li> <li>• Provide veterinarians with baseline information to help inform animal stability real-time.</li> </ul>   |
| 6 | Anthropogenic Sources of Scarring/Injury                                    | <p>Understanding the anthropogenic sources of scarring for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide insight into behavior around boats and nets prior to any sampling or catch efforts.</li> </ul>  |
| 7 | Toxin/Contaminant Exposure  | <p>Understanding the toxin and contaminant exposure for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aid in site selection for any future live animal sampling or handling efforts;</li> <li>• Aid sampling protocol design;</li> <li>• Aid veterinary efforts by providing background health information that may affect animal stability during handling situations;</li> <li>• Provide insight into potential health concerns for personnel involved in health assessments.</li> <li>• Provide information for potential toxin and contaminant mitigation efforts</li> </ul> |
| 8 | Common Diseases   | <p>Understanding common diseases for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Aid sampling protocol design;</li> <li>• Aid veterinary efforts by providing background health information that may affect animal stability during handling situations;</li> <li>• Provide insight into potential zoonotic diseases of concern for personnel involved in health assessments (or stranding response).</li> </ul>   |
| 9 | Medication and Drug Use (e.g., appropriate doses and documented responses)  | <p>Understanding any previous medication and drug use for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> will:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide veterinarians with baseline medication information prior to any future animal care situations. If available, this can provide insight into species-specific responses to different medications and drugs and appropriate species-specific dosing in case veterinarians need to use medications in an animal handling or <i>ex-situ</i> scenario.</li> </ul>  |

## Data/resource gap - Priority rank 1: Baseline Biological Information (Biology, Natural History, and Reproduction)

The first and third data gaps were combined under “*Baseline Biological Information*” and ranked as #1. These general knowledge gaps represent components of valuable species specific biological information. Although important, the data gaps are so broad, WG7 does not have targeted activities to recommend for this ranking. Rather, relevant information gathered from other working groups should be shared with WG7 in preparation for remote biopsy and/or health assessment efforts. The incorporated data gaps include:

- 1) Biology and Natural History (e.g. species-specific behavior, ranging patterns, habitat use, activity patterns, group dynamics, communication, morphometrics etc.)
- 3) Reproduction

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>  | <p>Data on biology, natural history and reproduction is best collected through field studies that include photo-identification of individually recognizable animals whose morphology, behaviour, movements, and reproductive status (in the case of mothers with calves) can be monitored over time. Assessment of the feasibility, logistics and costs of photo-identification field surveys was dealt with in-depth by CCAHD Working Group 3.</p> <p>Data on reproduction and life history parameters can also be collected through assessment of carcasses that have stranded or been bycaught in fishing gears. For example, necropsies and post-necropsy sample analysis can yield information on age (e.g., through examination of growth layer groups on teeth), reproductive status (through examination of the corpora lutea on females). Assessment of the feasibility, logistics and costs of conducting necropsies on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> carcasses is covered in detail by Working Group 5.</p> <p>Data on habitat and ranging patterns can be collected through opportunistic tagging, with satellite-linked transmitters or other tags, of live-stranded or live by-caught dolphins. This activity is not assessed by other working groups, and as such is assessed in more detail below.</p> |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, its habitats and range state logistics:</p> | <p>Small-boat-based field surveys incorporating photo-identification to document distribution, behaviour, movements and, to a limited extent, reproductive status (in the case of the presence of calves) are feasible and already planned for the Senegal Gambia region.</p> <p>Data collection from strandings is also considered feasible, although considerable efforts will be required to strengthen stranding networks and increase local capacity to collect samples from strandings. While teeth are relatively easy to collect, examination of corpora lutea and other more</p>   |



|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <p>sophisticated analyses require a greater level of experience and expertise that likely can only be achieved through hands-on training or video tutorials. Veterinary pathologists with experience in land-mammals may be the best candidates for training on detailed necropsy protocols that would yield valuable information on health and reproduction.</p> <p>Opportunistic tagging will require timely access to tags and trained personnel and the acquisition of appropriate permits, and will be challenging. Tags could be held at centralized sites in a few key range states, and attachment training provided.</p> |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>   | <p><b>(a) Short/medium-term (&lt;2 years):</b> 1) Conduct boat-based field surveys in areas where healthy populations of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> are known to be present. 2) Conduct necropsies on opportunistic <i>Sousa teuszii</i> carcasses .</p> <p><b>(b) Longer-term (&gt;2 years):</b> Provide satellite-linked tags to be held at centralized sites, and provide attachment training in those countries where healthy <i>Sousa teuszii</i> populations are known to exist, and where tags could be opportunistically deployed during a live stranding or disentanglement.</p>   |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>See the templates for Working Groups 3 and 5 for assessments of the costs of field surveys and assessing strandings. African Aquatic Conservation Fund can provide logistics and personnel for strandings, sampling and rescues in Senegal.</p> <p>A small number of satellite-linked tags, tagging supplies, and tracking services have been offered by the Chicago Zoological Society's Sarasota Dolphin Research Program at no cost.</p>  |

### Data/resource gap - Priority rank 2: *Environmental Conditions*

Environmental conditions such as water quality, depth, currents, seasonal and tidal fluctuations, and substrate are all important for preparation for live animal remote sampling and health assessments. It is recommended that basic information is gathered prior to live animal work, followed by more extensive site surveys once a target region or field site is selected.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1. Environmental data collection.</b> Prospective collection of environmental data during field surveys in known <i>Sousa teuszii</i> habitats: collect data on depth, salinity, turbidity, acidity, and pollutants during the course of planned surveys that will also incorporate photo-identification and other research techniques.</li> <li><b>2. Retrospective data.</b> Review of previously collected data from all available sources. Possible sources include peer reviewed literature on harmful algal blooms or coastal development projects, reports and data on local water quality held by government agencies and oceanographic laboratories, and any archived data.</li> <li><b>3. Local Ecological Knowledge (LEK) interviews.</b> Interviews with fishers and local community members, as well as scientists familiar with the area to assess their perception of environmental conditions where <i>Sousa teuszii</i> are seen.</li> </ol>  |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, its habitats and range state logistics:</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1. Environmental data collection.</b> Achievability is high if coordinated with planned field surveys, provided funding can be found for the necessary sampling equipment and it can be imported to field sites without unforeseen difficulties.</li> <li><b>2. Retrospective data.</b> Achievability is high depending on acquisition of data. Will require partners on the ground in range states with appropriate contacts with relevant government agencies and laboratories that may have archival data on water quality parameters;</li> <li><b>3. Local Ecological Knowledge (LEK) interviews.</b> Working Group 6 assessed the feasibility and logistics of conducting interviews with a range of stakeholders in areas where <i>Sousa teuszii</i> are thought to occur. Topics of interviews initially focus on presence/absence of the species mapping fisheries and assessing threats from bycatch and hunting. Although it will be important not to make interviews so long that they are an inconvenience or annoyance to those being interviewed, a few questions could be crafted to capture data useful to assessing <i>Sousa teuszii</i> environmental parameters.</li> </ol> |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single</p>  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>(a) Short/medium-term (&lt;2 years):</b> Incorporation of water sampling and data collection on other habitat parameters during field surveys in <i>Sousa teuszii</i> habitats. If retrospective environmental data is available, this should be reviewed as well.</li> <li><b>(b) Longer-term (&gt;2 years):</b> In an effort to make recommendations on site and season choice for any remote sampling or live captures, compile and analyze water sample data collected across multiple <i>Sousa teuszii</i></li> </ol>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>  | <p>sites and over time to assess differences in pollutants, contaminants, and disease organisms.</p>  |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(i) Cost is variable depending on how much prospective data is collected and/or reviewed and in how many target regions. The cost could range from moderate to large.</p> <p>(ii) Key resources include experienced personnel for the review of available data. Incorporation of local participation is essential through engagement of local students, veterinarians, scientists, and research assistants.</p> <p>For LEK interviewing, as noted by Working Group 6, appropriate personnel and training are essential.</p> <p>Water sampling could be conducted alongside planned field surveys that will employ small boats to document <i>Sousa teuszii</i> distribution and habitat use in areas where populations are known to persist. This activity will need include trained personnel for collection of environmental samples in cooperation with local communities.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any co-funding or donations in kind.</p> <p>Funding has already been secured for 3-4 weeks of field surveys in the Saloum Delta, Senegal. If appropriate sampling equipment can be secured in time, measuring of habitat parameters and collection of water samples can be included in this survey, which will be hosted by the African Aquatic Conservation Fund, and will involve both international and local scientists, as well as local trainees.</p> |

### Data/resource gap - Priority rank 3: *Response to External Stimuli*

All species respond differently to external stimuli. Understanding how a species reacts can help teams prepare for any future hands-on work where approaching, catching and/or animal handling is needed. To best capture this knowledge gap and associated recommendations, data gaps 4, 5, and 6 were combined under priority rank #3. The incorporated data gaps include:

4. Response to boats, nets, capture, and external stimuli
5. Vital physiological statistics
6. Anthropogenic sources of scarring/injury

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1. Retrospective data.</b> Review of previously collected data from all available sources, including from other <i>Sousa</i> species. Baseline physiological information such as respiratory rate and/or heart rate are valuable for any future hands-on efforts. All available stranding and photo data should be reviewed, as well as any data available from capture, rehabilitation, and health assessment efforts with other <i>Sousa</i> species, as well as those that have lived in managed care (e.g., <i>S. plumbea</i> in Bahrain). Full literature reviews should also be conducted. Review of photos taken of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> could also include a review of all evidence of anthropogenic scarring - including evidence of interaction with fishing gear, propeller scars or other injuries that could have been incurred from close interaction with human activity</li> <li><b>2. LEK and expert interviews.</b> Interviews with fishers and local community members, as well as scientists that have worked around <i>Sousa teuszii</i> or other <i>Sousa</i> species;</li> <li><b>3. Opportunistic collection of data on animal response during live strandings or entanglements:</b> Prospective, coordinated data collection from opportunistic situations, such as animal strandings should be utilized.</li> <li><b>4. Focused field studies on animal responses to human stimuli:</b> This would entail carefully designed studies to determine how animals respond to vessel approaches and other elements that would be involved with, or lead up to full capture and release health assessments.</li> </ol> |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, it's habitats and range state logistics:</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1. Retrospective data.</b> Achievability is high if personnel are obtained to aid with the acquisition of archived data and associated tasking required for proper review. Constraints include accessing data, otherwise this task should be achievable;</li> <li><b>2. LEK and expert interviews.</b> Working Group 6 has assessed the feasibility and logistics that would be required to conduct interview surveys in <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range states. Topics of interviews will initially focus on presence/absence of the species mapping fisheries and assessing threats from bycatch and hunting. Although it will be important not to make interviews so long that they are an inconvenience to those being interviewed, a few additional questions might be added to interviews with fishers in areas of known <i>Sousa teuszii</i> distribution to determine whether they have any information on animal response to entrapment, entanglement, or other situations that could inform reactions to capture and handling for health assessments. Achievability is variable depending on range state logistics and securing appropriate personnel.</li> <li><b>3. Opportunistic collection of data on animal response during live strandings or entanglements:</b> As the CCAHD network grows, and awareness of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> conservation needs increases, it is possible that a live stranding or entanglement will be reported in time for</li> </ol>   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <p>individuals working with the CCAHD to attend the event with qualified veterinarians, and collect valuable data on respirations, heart rate, and other indicators of the animal's response to captivity and handling (see for example a document recently submitted for publication by Kema Kema et al describing the handling and release of a Risso's dolphin entrapped in a marina in Gabon). The preparation of clear protocols that can be shared with practitioners in range states will ensure that the most can be made of these opportunities and useful data is collected.</p> <p><b>4. Focused field studies on animal response.</b> Achievability is variable. Appropriate personnel, study design, and implementation are needed. Standardization of data collection protocols is recommended. Success depends on range state logistics and access to animal strandings and observational situations.</p>   |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p> | <p><b>(a) Short/medium-term (&lt;2 years):</b> Conduct a retrospective data review of all peer-reviewed literature, reports, and photos that can inform understanding of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> response to external stimuli. This is considered the most appropriate task to accomplish this goal in the short-term. Review of what is already available is the logical first step, with no risk to individual animals and minimal-moderate logistical challenges. A focus should be placed on review of photos, stranding data, and information available from other <i>Sousa</i> species. 2) Inclusion of appropriate questions to assess local knowledge of animal's reactions to entrapment, entanglement, or other stimuli, in interviews that are conducted in areas of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> distribution. 3) Opportunistic collection of data with stranded animals such as respiratory rates and response to boats/nets should be collected if appropriate personnel are present. The development of recommended protocols and standardization of data collection forms is recommended.</p> <p><b>(b) Longer-term (&gt;2 years):</b> Focused field studies could be conducted in the long term.</p> |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind</p>                   | <p>(i) Cost is variable depending on how much retrospective data is available and how many prospective interviews and/or data collection are conducted. Cost would vary from moderate-large.</p> <p>(ii) Key resources include experienced personnel for the review of available data, interviewing, and protocol development for opportunistic data collection and/or field studies. International travel and visas may be required.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any co-funding or donations in kind.</p> <p>(a) African Aquatic Conservation Fund- logistics and personnel for interviews and live animal strandings.</p>   |

and/or equipment donations  
that could support this activity

#### Data/resource gap - Priority rank 4: *Health Threats*

In an effort to best understand the toxin, contaminant, and disease concerns surrounding *Sousa teuszii*, relevant data should be reviewed and/or collected. To best capture this knowledge gap and associated recommendations, data gaps 7 and 8 were combined under priority rank #4. The incorporated data gaps include:

- 7. Toxins/contaminant exposure
- 8. Common diseases

1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:

- 1. Retrospective data.** Review of previously collected data from all available sources, including photos and stranding information. Review of existing photos would include assessment of skin lesions and scars, as well as body condition scoring (if possible from available photos). Complete literature review should be performed as well;
- 2. Collection of samples from stranded carcasses:** Collection of blubber and organ and tissue samples from carcasses of stranded or bycaught *Sousa teuszii* will allow the assessment of the contaminant load that may be carried by other individuals in the population. Guidance should be provided via protocols, on the amount of tissue required and its appropriate storage for this purpose.
- 3. Prospective opportunistic data collection.** Coordinated data collection from opportunistic situations, such as animal standings, should be utilized.

2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to *Sousa teuszii*, its habitats and range state logistics:

- 1. Retrospective data.** Available data is limited so achievability is high if personnel is obtained to aid with the literature and photo review;
- 2. Sampling of carcasses:** Data collection from strandings is also considered feasible, although considerable efforts will be required to strengthen stranding networks and increase local capacity to collect samples from strandings. Collection of samples suitable for histopathological analysis and/or contaminant analysis requires a greater level of experience and expertise that likely can only be achieved through hands-on training or video tutorials, and very clear protocols for sample storage. Lab facilities to analyze the samples would ideally be found in country to avoid the need for export permits. Facilities that deal with animal livestock, pandemics (e.g. Ebola) and/or terrestrial wildlife may be adequately equipped for these analyses.
- 3. Opportunistic data collection.** Achievability is high, especially in certain range states, but requires organization and training of staff and standardization of protocols. The lack of coordinated response capacity is a limiting factor, depending on the range state in question.

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | Constraints include funding for these activities, challenging range state logistics, and feasibility of timely response.  |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>   | <p><b>(a) Short/medium-term (&lt;2 years):</b> 1) Conduct a retrospective review of available literature and photographic data that can provide insight into contaminant exposure and disease. 2) Collect organ and tissue samples from carcasses for histopathological and contaminant analyses (and provide clear protocols for how these should be collected and stored). 3) Collect samples opportunistically during live strandings or entanglements where applicable. Training of in-country personnel should commence immediately.</p> <p><b>(b) Longer-term (&gt;2 years):</b> A longer term goal should be the coordination of stranding response in range states that are amendable to these activities and where there is a chance of recovering animals alive and dead. Protocols for sampling should be implemented along with personnel training. Sample storage should be determined.</p>                            |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(i) Cost is variable depending on how much retrospective data is reviewed. Opportunistic live animal sampling of stranded animals would raise costs if a coordinated effort and international training is implemented. A moderate to large budget is expected.</p> <p>(ii) Key resources include experienced personnel for the review of available data. If live animal sampling protocols are drafted, this will take coordinated effort and experienced personnel as well as training of local staff. International travel and visas will be required.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any co-funding or donations in kind.</p> <p>(a) African Aquatic Conservation Fund-logistics and personnel for live animal standings/sample collection. AACF is in the process of developing a relationship with the veterinary school at the University Cheikh Anta Diop, Dakar. We hope this will provide a location for sample analyses.</p> |

### Data/resource gap - Priority rank 5: Baseline data on medication and drug use

Any previous medication, sedation, and other drug use data should be reviewed in preparation for live animal health assessments. Since *Sousa teuszii* have not been kept in aquariums or zoos or handled for rescue, rehabilitation, or health assessments, this information will come from other *Sousa* species.



| 9. Medication and Drug Use  |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:  | <p><b>1. Retrospective data.</b> Review of previously collected data from all available sources, including other <i>Sousa</i> species – especially those in captivity - to understand what medications have been used to treat various conditions and how animals have responded;</p> <p><b>2. Prospective field work and opportunistic live animal data gathering.</b> Coordination with other <i>Sousa</i> efforts worldwide should occur to maximize relevant data collection. If health assessments are occurring and/or stranded animals are being treated in any other countries, applicable data should be gathered and reviewed for application to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>. Potentially important data includes any use of sedatives, emergency drugs, and/or antibiotics. Appropriate communication with other <i>Sousa</i> experts should occur to ensure relevant information is being shared.</p> |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , its habitats and range state logistics:  | <p><b>1. Retrospective data.</b> Available data are limited so achievability is high if personnel are obtained to aid with the tasking. Limited data exist from other <i>Sousa</i> species from previous captures, health assessments, and previous animals living in managed care settings. These data should be accessible through various contacts and literature review;</p> <p><b>2. Prospective field work and opportunistic live animal data gathering.</b> Achievability is high depending on relationships with other <i>Sousa</i> working groups. Constraints include limited opportunities.</p>   |
| 3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:<br><br>(a) the short/medium-term (<2 years)<br><br>(b) the longer-term (>2 years) | <p><b>(a) Short/medium-term (&lt;2 years):</b> Retrospective data review and opportunistic data collection should occur in the short-term. Data available for review are limited so the effort should be small. Constraints include limited opportunities for prospective data collection with other species.</p> <p><b>(b) Longer-term (&gt;2 years):</b> If prospective data collection has not occurred with other <i>Sousa</i> species, this coordination and effort should continue into the longer-term.</p>   |
| With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:<br><br>(i) likely budget requirement<br><br>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;  | <p>(i) You may either provide an exact costing if you have that information available, or else indicate whether the potential budget would be: small (&lt;20K USD), moderate (~20-75K USD), large (75-150K USD) or high (&gt;150K USD):</p> <p>Cost is variable depending on how much retrospective data is reviewed. Opportunistic live animal applications either through stranded animals or work with other <i>Sousa</i> species could raise the cost. A moderate cost is expected.</p>  |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>(ii) Please provide a list of <b>key</b> resources/equipment that would need to be considered to accomplish the action. That may variously include boat charter (with drivers), international travel/visas, accommodation, meeting room hire, equipment, laboratory time, analysis time. <b>ALL</b> actions should include facilitation of local participation:</p> <p>Key resources include experienced personnel for the review of available data and for participation in any prospective efforts with other <i>Sousa</i> species. International travel and visas may be required.</p> <p>(iii) Please list any co-funding or donations in kind that could potentially be made by WG members or associates to support this activity in a funding bid (e.g. equipment, services, technical support, staff time, lab time, etc.).</p> <p>(c) Stephanie Plon – advice for available data for <i>Sousa plumbea</i>.</p> |
|--|---|

## A10. Working Group 8 Full Report: Acoustic Studies

| Background  |
|---|
| What is already known/available <u>for your WG Target</u> with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?  |
| <p><b>Working Group Targets:</b> Working Group 8 was tasked with assessing the following target identified by Weir et al. (2020):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2.7. Investigate the potential for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> acoustic monitoring</li> </ul> <p><b>Background to acoustic work on <i>Sousa teuszii</i></b></p> <p>There has been minimal acoustic information collected to date on <i>Sousa teuszii</i>. The only published data available on its vocalisation characteristics is an evaluation of whistles and some basic click (and burst-pulse) parameters described for <i>S. teuszii</i> in southern Angola, using a drop hydrophone deployed opportunistically during small boat surveys (Weir, 2010, 2011). There are similar, currently unpublished data, available for Guinea (Weir, unpublished data). Both studies were limited by the recording equipment used in the field with an upper frequency limit of 46 kHz. Attempts to carry out similar deployments in the vicinity of <i>S. teuszii</i> in the Conkouati Douli National Park (CDNP) in the Republic of the Congo were unsuccessful, due to dolphin evasiveness and possibly due to cessation of vocal activity in proximity to the survey boat (Collins et al., 2013).</p> <p>At least with regard to whistles, <i>S. teuszii</i> produces broadly-similar vocalisations to other members of the <i>Sousa</i> genus. However, there is variation between <i>Sousa</i> species, and between populations within some <i>Sousa</i> species (Weir, 2011; Wang et al., 2013; Dong et al., 2019).</p> <p>During 2012 and 2013, some work with C-PODs (Chelonia Ltd) was carried out on <i>S. teuszii</i> in Gabon, and in the Republic of the Congo, with the aim of characterising patterns of habitat use at the deployment sites (Collins et al., 2013). Data from five of the sites has been analysed, providing comparative information on dolphin presence (species unconfirmed) between the sites, and some data on diel activity. Differences in deployment durations and times of year hindered any conclusions on spatial or seasonal patterns of dolphin occurrence. Subsequent work in the CDNP included the employment of two trained local observers to monitor two of the C-POD deployment sites in order to correlate acoustic data with visually-confirmed species (Collins et al., 2013); those data have not yet been analysed<sup>1</sup>. No further C-POD deployments have occurred since 2013.</p> <p><b>Acoustics as a potential monitoring option for <i>Sousa teuszii</i></b></p> <p>While there has been limited effort to monitor dolphin occurrence using C-PODs, and to opportunistically record basic data on call parameters, no consistent longer-term acoustic monitoring programmes exist for <i>S.</i></p> |

<sup>1</sup> The WG indicated that the collection of a new F-POD dataset with concurrent visual observations was far more likely to inform species differentiation than the analysis of this existing C-POD dataset.

*teuszii*. However, there are precedents for the success of static passive acoustic monitoring (static-PAM) for the long-term monitoring of other vulnerable coastal odontocete species (including *Sousa* species), for example:

- A robust acoustic monitoring program was carried out in the northern Gulf of California between 2011 and 2015, using a systematic array of 46 C-POD sampling sites distributed across the core range of the Critically Endangered vaquita (*Phocoena sinus*). The study was able to demonstrate a ‘catastrophic decline’ of the vaquita population, with an annual rate of decline of 34% per year (Jaramillo-Legorreta et al., 2017).
- The ‘Static Acoustic Monitoring of the Baltic Sea Harbour Porpoise (SAMBAH)’ project deployed over 300 C-PODs across the Baltic Sea over a two-year period (SAMBAH, 2016), to collect data on the Critically Endangered subpopulation of Baltic Sea harbour porpoise (*Phocoena phocoena*). That study produced density and seasonal abundance estimates, and valuable information on distribution.
- An array of seven SoundTraps deployed for several months along a 100 km stretch of coastline to the south-west of Hainan Island in China, generated information on the distribution and habitat use of a newly discovered Indo-Pacific humpback dolphin (*Sousa chinensis*) population (Caruso et al., 2020).
- Static acoustic monitoring using C-PODs and F-PODs has been successfully applied to monitoring other *Sousa* species, for example C-PODs have been used during studies of the Indian Ocean humpback dolphin (*Sousa plumbea*) in India (Temple et al., 2016), and F-PODs in Hong Kong monitoring *S. chinensis* (Nick Tregenza, pers. comm).

These examples indicate some of the potential uses of acoustic techniques for monitoring threatened and poorly-known cetacean species.

### Assessment of data gaps

WG8 is one of several WGs that are focused on data collection aimed at addressing Target Area 2 “Fill Knowledge Gaps” (Weir and Collins, 2020). The specific short to medium term (<2 years) target listed by Weir and Collins (2020) and intended for discussion by WG8 was:

*Target 2.7. Investigate the potential for acoustic monitoring (medium term)*

Acoustic devices can provide good information on cetacean occurrence, but previously it hasn't been possible to distinguish between *Sousa* and *Tursiops* using C-PODs. Newer technologies (e.g. F-PODs, SoundTraps) may be able to accomplish this. A preliminary feasibility study would aid in assessing whether or not acoustic methods could specifically identify *S. teuszii* and thus be incorporated into cost-effective long-term monitoring plans.

It was since noted that ‘An initial acoustic study may be a cheap and easily implemented addition to a funded field survey in Senegal-Gambia and it is recommended that this possibility is discussed with the WG. Otherwise, this [acoustic monitoring] is currently considered to be a longer-term Target’ (Weir et al., 2020).

In this short report we focus on identifying data gaps and priority recommendations for achieving Target 2.7.

## References

- Caruso F, Dong L, Lin M, Liu M, Gong Z, Xu W, Alonge G and Li S (2020) Monitoring of a Nearshore Small Dolphin Species Using Passive Acoustic Platforms and Supervised Machine Learning Techniques. *Front. Mar. Sci.* 7:267. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2020.00267
- Collins, T., Stindberg, S., Mboumba, R., Dilambaka, E., Thonio, J., Mouissou, C., Boukaka, R., Saffou, G.K., Buckland, L., Leeney, R., Antunes, R. and Rosenbaum, H.C. (2013). Progress on Atlantic humpback dolphin conservation and research efforts in Congo and Gabon. Scientific Committee Report. International Whaling Commission, SC/65a/SM16rev.
- Dong, L., Caruso, F., Lin, M., Liu, M., Gong, Z., Dong, J., Cang, S. and Li, S. (2019). Whistles emitted by Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins (*Sousa chinensis*) in Zhanjiang waters, China. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America* 145, 3289 (2019); <https://doi.org/10.1121/1.5110304>
- Jaramillo-Legorreta, A., Cardenas-Hinojosa, G., Nieto-Garcia, E., Rojas-Bracho, L., Ver Hoef, J., Moore, J., Tregenza, N., Barlow, J., Gerrodette, T., Thomas, L., and Taylor, B. (2017). Passive acoustic monitoring of the decline of Mexico's critically endangered vaquita: Decline of Vaquita. *Conservation Biology*, 31(1), 183–191. <https://doi.org/10.1111/cobi.12789>
- SAMBAH (2016). Final report for LIFE Project Number LIFE08 NAT/S/000261 covering the project activities from 01/01/2010 to 30/09/2015. Reporting date 29/02/2016, 80pp.
- Temple AJ, Tregenza N, Amir OA, Jiddawi N, Berggren P. Spatial and Temporal Variations in the Occurrence and Foraging Activity of Coastal Dolphins in Menai Bay, Zanzibar, Tanzania. *PLoS One*. 2016;11(3):e0148995. Published 2016 Mar 2. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0148995
- Wang, Z., Fang, L., Shi, W., Wang, K. and Wang, D. (2013). Whistle characteristics of free-ranging Indo-Pacific humpback dolphins (*Sousa chinensis*) in Sanniang Bay, China. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America* 133, 2479-2489.
- Weir, C.R. (2010). First description of Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*) whistles, recorded off Angola. *Bioacoustics*, 19: 211–224.
- Weir, C.R. (2011). Ecology and conservation of cetaceans in the waters between Angola and the Gulf of Guinea, with focus on the Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*). PhD Thesis, University of Aberdeen, UK.
- Weir, C. R., and Collins, T. (2020). Potential short- and medium-term targets for the conservation of *Sousa teuszii*. Consortium for the Conservation of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin, Unpublished report.
- Weir, C., Leeney, R. and Collins, T. (2020). Reinvigorating conservation efforts for the Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*): A brief progress report. Paper SC/68B/SM07 presented to the International Whaling Commission, Cambridge, UK.

## Identifying priority conservation management data gaps

Please list and rank these in the Table according to their perceived importance for achieving conservation and management outcomes.

Much of the information required in order to provide informed conservation-management advice for *S. teuszii* is currently lacking, including (at least) distribution, abundance, population trends, movements, population structure, life history, threats, and mortality rates. Components that could potentially be addressed over the longer-term using acoustic monitoring techniques are summarised in Appendix 1.

However, it is recognised that the immediate application of any acoustic monitoring techniques to *S. teuszii* is limited by a paucity of data on their vocalisations, detection ranges and, importantly, the ability to consistently differentiate the species from the common bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*). The latter is a significant issue, since *Tursiops* is sympatric with *S. teuszii* throughout the latter's range (the two have been documented in mixed-species groups in several countries), and detailed information on the relative occurrence of each at particular sites over different seasons is lacking.

Consequently, the identified data gaps and recommendations identified by WG8 primarily relate to carrying out a range of feasibility studies that would inform the applicability of acoustic methods to monitoring *S. teuszii*. These feasibility studies align well with the short-to-medium term scope of Target 2.7. In this context, the identified priority data gaps are listed in Table 1.

**Table 1.** Priority data gaps that need to be addressed ahead of the development of a long-term acoustic monitoring programme for *Sousa teuszii*.

| Priority rank* | Identified data gap  | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i>   |
|----------------|--|---|
| 1              | <b>Species differentiation</b><br>Can <i>S. teuszii</i> be reliably distinguished from other odontocetes (especially <i>Tursiops truncatus</i> ) based on click and/or whistle parameters? | Inability to reliably detect and distinguish the target species would restrict analysis to 'dolphin species' level, and inherently limit the scope for long-term monitoring of <i>S. teuszii</i> using acoustic methods. This may be less important at sites shown to be dominated by <i>S. teuszii</i> , but would be problematic in many of the 19 range states where both species occur along open coastlines. |
| 2              | <b>Knowledge of effectiveness of acoustic monitoring in <i>S. teuszii</i> habitats</b>   | There is a lack of knowledge regarding the feasibility of deploying static acoustic devices for long-term monitoring of <i>S. teuszii</i> populations in most range states, with regard to selection of deployment methods, loss of devices (to theft or fishing activity), selection of sites, influence of habitat type on click parameters and   |

|          |                                   |   |
|----------|-----------------------------------|---|
|          |                                   | detection, options for involvement of local communities etc. The lack of experience renders it difficult to assess the potential for wide-scale application of the method in the <i>S. teuszii</i> range states.  |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Availability for detection</b> | Understanding how much of the time <i>S. teuszii</i> is vocalizing for, and thus available for detection by acoustic devices, is necessary for any attempt to derive absolute estimates of density in an area (also requiring information on detection ranges from the device), but for trends over time it is sufficient to know, or be able to reasonably assume, that availability has not substantially changed. The species may be present but not vocalizing (resulting in an under-estimate in occurrence). It needs to be clarified (separately for whistles and clicks) for what proportion of time the species is detected acoustically when present. |



| Addressing the priority data gaps  |  |
|--|--|
| For each of the priority data gaps identified in Table 1, please complete the table below (copy and paste more tables as needed).  |  |
| Recommendations for approaches to address each of the priority data gaps identified in Table 1 are outlined below. The WG notes that there is potential for some of these feasibility studies to occur concurrently with the activities recommended by other WGs, for example with WG3 which is assessing boat-based field surveys. Additionally, capacity-building has been highlighted as an important data/resource gap in the range-wide conservation of <i>S. teuszii</i> , and should be factored in to all of the recommended activities. |  |
| Priority data gap 1: Species differentiation   |  |
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:   | <p>Potential field methods for investigating species differentiation include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deploy devices at sites where both species occur or where relative occurrence is unknown, and conduct simultaneous visual observations for ground-truthing;</li> <li>2. Deploy acoustic devices during boat-based work while in the presence of <i>Sousa</i> and <i>Tursiops</i>.</li> </ol>   |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , it's habitats and range state logistics:  | <p>See Appendix 2 for a brief overview of available equipment for <i>S. teuszii</i> acoustic monitoring. The WG concluded that species differentiation would need to assess <i>both</i> click parameters <i>and</i> whistle parameters. The optimal recording equipment for assessing each of these call types is different and comprises:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <u>Clicks</u>: F-PODs (Chelonia, UK), which are static devices that detect and log echolocation click trains and implement selective full waveform capture;</li> <li>• <u>Whistles</u>: SoundTraps (STs; Ocean Instruments, NZ), which are static devices that can record in full bandwidth at frequencies up to 150 kHz and sample rate of 576 kHz, and includes a click detector that detects and logs echolocation clicks as waveform snippets when recording full bandwidth at lower frequencies.</li> </ul> <p>Use of either type of recording equipment would need to take into account the analysis time required to assess whether call or acoustic encounter parameters differed sufficiently to facilitate confident discrimination. Automation exists for click analysis with either F-PODs or SoundTraps, but the data analysis will be more challenging and lengthier (and potentially more subjective) for whistles. Assessment of the time costs and subjectivity of analysis of all approaches is essential to establish what could be a workable monitoring method as opposed to a research demonstration.</p> <p><b>1. Deploy in multi-species (or unknown) sites and conduct visual observations:</b></p> |

|  |   |
|--|---|
|  | <p>There are two options for achieving this: (1) deploy a device in the area of planned boat surveys, and use the visual dataset from the boat to cross-reference species identifications with acoustic recordings; and (2) establish a targeted study that uses shore-based observers monitoring a static device close to shore. While option 1 should be carried out whenever possible during forthcoming <i>S. teuszii</i> field studies, the WG recommends the second option as a preferred option to: (1) maximize visual monitoring time of recorder and thus increase likelihood of simultaneous visual and acoustic data gathering; (2) maximize community participation; and (3) minimize boat disturbance to both dolphins and recordings. Achievability for option 2 has already been demonstrated in the Republic of Congo, where local observers were trained to carry out shore-based observations to identify species at a C-POD site. The use of this approach is potentially limited in some countries by availability of suitable deployment sites located sufficiently close to shore, but is likely to be viable in several range states.</p> <p><b>2. Deploy devices from boat in proximity to each species during targeted focal studies:</b> Achievability has already been demonstrated during opportunistic deployments in Angola in the presence of <i>S. teuszii</i>. This method should be straightforward to accomplish and has the significant advantage over other methods of having good species verification and potentially close proximity to animals to facilitate good signal-to-noise ratio recordings. However, this may be a disadvantage for F-POD studies as it does not correspond to the data collected in long term static deployments which largely comprises longer-range detections with valuable collateral data on each encounter. Additionally, it may only be feasible to stop a boat and turn off the engine in some sheltered habitats, and is unlikely to be an option when animals are in the surf or over sandbanks along exposed coastlines (and thus site choice will be important). The WG would encourage the collection of opportunistic data from both species whenever possible, but also recommends at least one targeted boat study aimed specifically at collecting these recordings. The latter should deploy an F-POD and a SoundTrap 300HF or 600HF simultaneously, with the SoundTrap recording at a sample rate of 576 kHz in order to record click trains at a bandwidth of 150 kHz and optimize both click and whistle analysis.</p> <p>For both Method 1 and Method 2, an exploratory analysis period would be required after the fieldwork to measure the distinctiveness of vocalizations between the two species and assess whether species discrimination is possible and how best to achieve it. Part of this will involve determining whether species discrimination is possible with clicks alone, thus allowing the use of only F-PODs for long term monitoring, or whether a combination of click and whistle discrimination is</p> |
|--|---|

|   | necessary, thus requiring the use of SoundTraps. In either case methods will need to be developed for auto-classification of vocalizations allowing rapid analysis of large datasets downstream. This will require collaboration with experts in the field of detection and classification, particularly for combined whistle and click techniques.  |                   |                        |                   |                             |      |                |
|---|--|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|------|----------------|
| 3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:<br><br>(a) the short/medium-term (<2 years)<br><br>(b) the longer-term (>2 years) | <p>(a) In the short/medium term, the WG assigned high importance to both of the approaches identified to potentially address the species discrimination issue. The two priority recommended activities are therefore:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• To adopt the approach of Collins et al. (2013) by deploying F-PODs and STs at suitable nearshore sites and employing/training community members and/or park rangers to conduct concurrent visual observations. It is considered that the Republic of Congo or Gabon would be ideal choices for this study, but suitable sites likely exist in a number of range states. The use of incentives in the form of payments for acoustic devices retrieved or data collected, have been shown to be effective and would provide valuable experience.</li><li>• To carry out targeted focal group acoustic deployments with both F-PODs and STs from boat with both <i>Tursiops</i> and <i>Sousa</i> in at least one site where both species are known to occur (regular sightings of both species do occur in some countries, for example Angola, Congo and Guinea-Bissau).</li></ul> <p>(b) There is potential for <i>Sousa</i> and <i>Tursiops</i> vocal characteristics to vary across habitats and between geographic regions (the species range comprises 19 countries). Assuming that the short/medium term study into species differentiation produces positive results, longer-term studies to investigate species differentiation should then be carried out in a variety of habitats <i>within</i> range states, and in several different countries. This would permit a better assessment of the applicability of using acoustic methods for <i>S. teuszii</i> assessment surveys, for example presence-absence surveys in unconfirmed range states, and preliminary assessments of where to implement longer-term monitoring programmes in poorly-studied areas.</p> |                   |                        |                   |                             |      |                |
| With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:<br><br>(i) likely budget requirement   | <p><b>Recommended activity 1: shore-based observations</b></p> <p>Assuming two sites, and several months of data collection at each (i.e. a single deployment at each site), an <b>example</b> ballpark budget is:</p> <table><tr><th>Item</th><th>Approximate cost (USD)</th><th>Match funding (%)</th></tr><tr><td>F-PODs x 2 (@ \$1,800 each)</td><td>3600</td><td>100 (Chelonia)</td></tr></table>   | Item              | Approximate cost (USD) | Match funding (%) | F-PODs x 2 (@ \$1,800 each) | 3600 | 100 (Chelonia) |
| Item  | Approximate cost (USD)   | Match funding (%) |                        |                   |                             |      |                |
| F-PODs x 2 (@ \$1,800 each)   | 3600   | 100 (Chelonia)    |                        |                   |                             |      |                |

|  |   |               |                |
|--|---|---------------|----------------|
| (ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;<br><br>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity | SoundTrap ST600HF x 2 (@ \$5,200 each)  | 10400         | 0              |
|  | Batteries   | 150           | 0              |
|  | 512 Gb Soundcards for ST x 4  | 480           | 0              |
|  | Shipping of devices to country of use   | 400           | 0              |
|  | Moorings x 2  | 400           | 0              |
|  | Deployment/recovery boat charter x 2 (4 days @ \$100 per day)   | 400           | 0              |
|  | Vessel fuel (4 days @ \$50 per day)   | 200           | 0              |
|  | Travel to sites   | 2000          | 0              |
|  | Training of shore observer team (assumes remotely, or by local personnel, or during field visit by experienced personnel budgeted to another project) | 2000          | 0              |
|  | Salary for shore observer team (4 months salary for two people, @ \$1,000/month)  | 8000          | 100 (Chelonia) |
|  | Binoculars for shore observers (2 x \$300)  | 600           | 0              |
|  | GPS (2 x \$300)   | 600           | 0              |
|  | Basic cameras (2 x \$750)   | 1500          | 0              |
|  | Permit costs  | 150           | 0              |
|  | Analysis of F-POD data by Chelonia  | 2500          | 100            |
|  | Analysis of ST data by acoustician (preferably French-speaking)   | 5000          | 0              |
|  | Training of locally-based student acoustician and salary to help with analysis  | 2000          | 100 (Chelonia) |
|  | Portable hard drives for data backup (F-POD – SD cards max 80GB/yr/POD)   | 250           | 0              |
|  | Expert review of results with regard to informing long-term monitoring potential*   | 2000          | 0              |
|  | Currency exchange / contingency   | 1000          | 0              |
|  | Translation of resulting report   | 750           | 0              |
|  | <b>Total</b>  | <b>44,380</b> |                |

\*Within a year of the end of the field work any results of acoustic analysis should ideally be reviewed by a person with experience of the whole process of deriving a trend in a small cetacean population from acoustic data.

***Recommended activity 2: boat-based deployments***

Assuming one site and a single targeted boat survey of 10 days duration requiring a field visit by an international acoustician, an **example** ballpark budget is:

| Item  | Approximate cost (USD) | Match funding (%)       |
|---|------------------------|-------------------------|
| F-POD x 1   | 1800                   | 100 (Chelonia)          |
| SoundTrap x 1   | 5200                   | 100 (Ocean Instruments) |
| Shipping of devices to country of use   | 400                    | 0                       |
| Batteries   | 150                    | 0                       |
| 512 Gb Soundcards for ST x 2  | 240                    | 0                       |
| Boat charter for 10 days incl. skipper (10 days @ \$100 per day)                                  | 1000                   | 0                       |
| Vessel fuel (10 days @ \$50 per day)  | 500                    | 0                       |
| Travel to site  | 1500                   | 0                       |
| International flight and local transport for acoustician  | 3000                   | 0                       |
| Accommodation and food for acoustician and local team member (12 days @ \$130 per day per person) | 3120                   | 0                       |
| Salary for acoustician (2 weeks @ \$1200 per week)  | 2400                   | 0                       |
| Visa cost for acoustician   | 250                    | 0                       |
| Salary for local team member (2 weeks @ \$400 per week)   | 800                    | 100 (Chelonia)          |
| GPS x 1   | 300                    | 0                       |
| Permit costs  | 150                    | 0                       |
| Analysis of F-POD and ST data by Chelonia   | 2500                   | 100 (Chelonia)          |

|  |   |               |                |
|--|---|---------------|----------------|
|  | Analysis of ST data by acoustician (preferably French-speaking) (2 weeks @ \$1200 per week)               | 2400          | 0              |
|  | Training of locally-based student acoustician and salary to help with analysis (4 weeks @ \$500 per week) | 2000          | 100 (Chelonia) |
|  | Portable hard drives for data backup  | 250           | 0              |
|  | Translation of resulting report   | 750           | 0              |
|  | Currency exchange / contingency   | 1000          | 0              |
|  | <b>Total</b>  | <b>29,710</b> |                |

| <b>Priority data gap 2: Knowledge of effectiveness of acoustic monitoring in <i>S. teuszii</i> habitats</b>  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:   | 1. Conduct a pilot study in a region known to be of importance for <i>S. teuszii</i> , to incorporate static acoustic devices deployed across different habitat types that would facilitate comparisons of environmental noise and deployment challenges across sites while also providing initial data on dolphin occurrence (not necessarily distinguished to species level) and potential changes in click parameters in different habitat types. Ideally for a full year, so that seasonal changes in noise (i.e. wet versus dry seasons) and dolphin occurrence can be assessed.   |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , its habitats and range state logistics: | 1. The achievability of this approach is likely to be optimal in the Saloum Delta in Senegal, given the presence of a local partner (AACF) and a diverse range of habitat types occupied by a <i>S. teuszii</i> population. Non-invasive work such as acoustic monitoring already falls within current AACF permits. Possible constraints relate to deployment methods and loss of devices, but assessing those risks is part of the pilot study. A major constraint is the lack of understanding regarding occurrence of <i>Tursiops</i> within the Saloum Delta and ability to differentiate between species (as per Priority 1). However, if the latter proves not to be possible then the pilot study would still inform the feasibility of monitoring for dolphins in different habitat types, and provide a useful seasonal dataset on the occurrence of 'dolphin species.' |
| 3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a  | (a) The priority recommended activity is for three acoustic deployments (F-PODs, and perhaps also simultaneous SoundTraps if budget allows) to occur in three different habitats (e.g. narrow mangrove channel, semi-enclosed estuarine habitat, and open marine coast) within the Saloum Delta in Senegal for a full year. The results would be analyzed to determine achievable performance in detecting <i>S.</i>  |

| <p>single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>   | <p><i>teuszii</i> and rejecting other acoustic sources across a range of habitats, and will provide data on dolphin seasonal occurrence at the sites.</p> <p>(b) Together with the species discrimination work (Priority 1), the results from (a) will form the basis for producing recommendations for implementing longer-term and wider-region acoustic monitoring for <i>S. teuszii</i> (also applicable to <i>Tursiops</i>), with regard to site choice, deployment methods and optimizing detection.</p>  |                   |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
|--|---|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|------|----------------|---|------|---|-----------|-----|---|--------------------------------|-----|---|--|------|---|--|-----|---|-----------------|------|---|--|------|---|---|------|---|--|------|---|--|-----|---|
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>The following <b>example</b> ballpark budget assumes the following: (1) three separate sites; (2) one full year of monitoring, comprising three deployments each of four months duration at each site; and (3) a single field visit from a deployment expert at the start of the project who would then train up local personnel to recover and deploy for the remainder of the project:</p> <table><tr><th>Item</th><th>Approximate cost (USD)</th><th>Match funding (%)</th></tr><tr><td>F-PODs x 3 (@ \$1,800 each)</td><td>5400</td><td>100 (Chelonia)</td></tr><tr><td>Device mooring costs (@ \$400 per site)</td><td>1200</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Batteries</td><td>300</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Shipping of devices to Senegal</td><td>400</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Deployment/recovery boat charter x 2 (4 days @ \$100 per day per site)</td><td>1200</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Vessel fuel (4 days @ \$50 per day per site)</td><td>600</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Travel to sites</td><td>2000</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>International flight and local transport for field worker for one week to guide initial deployment and train local personnel</td><td>3000</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Accommodation and food for international field worker for one week (12 days @ \$130 per day per person)</td><td>1560</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Salary for international field worker for one week (@ \$1200 per week)</td><td>1200</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Visa cost for international field worker</td><td>250</td><td>0</td></tr></table> | Item              | Approximate cost (USD) | Match funding (%) | F-PODs x 3 (@ \$1,800 each) | 5400 | 100 (Chelonia) | Device mooring costs (@ \$400 per site) | 1200 | 0 | Batteries | 300 | 0 | Shipping of devices to Senegal | 400 | 0 | Deployment/recovery boat charter x 2 (4 days @ \$100 per day per site) | 1200 | 0 | Vessel fuel (4 days @ \$50 per day per site) | 600 | 0 | Travel to sites | 2000 | 0 | International flight and local transport for field worker for one week to guide initial deployment and train local personnel | 3000 | 0 | Accommodation and food for international field worker for one week (12 days @ \$130 per day per person) | 1560 | 0 | Salary for international field worker for one week (@ \$1200 per week) | 1200 | 0 | Visa cost for international field worker | 250 | 0 |
| Item   | Approximate cost (USD)  | Match funding (%) |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| F-PODs x 3 (@ \$1,800 each)  | 5400  | 100 (Chelonia)    |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Device mooring costs (@ \$400 per site)  | 1200  | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Batteries  | 300   | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Shipping of devices to Senegal   | 400   | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Deployment/recovery boat charter x 2 (4 days @ \$100 per day per site)   | 1200  | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Vessel fuel (4 days @ \$50 per day per site)   | 600   | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Travel to sites  | 2000  | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| International flight and local transport for field worker for one week to guide initial deployment and train local personnel   | 3000  | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Accommodation and food for international field worker for one week (12 days @ \$130 per day per person)  | 1560  | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Salary for international field worker for one week (@ \$1200 per week)   | 1200  | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |
| Visa cost for international field worker   | 250   | 0                 |                        |                   |                             |      |                |   |      |   |           |     |   |                                |     |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |                 |      |   |  |      |   |   |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |



|  |  |               |                        |
|--|--|---------------|------------------------|
|  | Salary for two local personnel for the training week and for carrying out the five subsequent deployments and recoveries | 2000          | 100 (Chelonia)         |
|  | GPS x 1  | 300           | 0                      |
|  | Permit costs (covered under AACF permit)   | 150           | 0                      |
|  | Analysis of F-POD data by Chelonia   | 5000          | 100 (Chelonia)         |
|  | Training of locally-based student acoustician and salary to help with analysis (6 weeks @ \$500 per week)                | 3000          | 100 (Chelonia)         |
|  | Portable hard drives for data backup   | 250           | 0                      |
|  | Translation of resulting report  | 750           | 0                      |
|  | SoundTraps x 3 (if dual deployments funded, @ \$5,200 each)  | 15600         | 33 (Ocean Instruments) |
|  | Analysis of ST data by acoustician (preferably French-speaking) (if dual deployments funded) (5 weeks @ \$1200 per week) | 6000          | 0                      |
|  | Currency exchange / contingency  | 1000          | 0                      |
|  | <b>Total F-PODs only</b>   | <b>29,560</b> |                        |
|  | <b>Total F-PODs and SoundTraps</b>   | <b>51,160</b> |                        |

### **Priority data gap 3: Availability for detection**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap: | <p>Understanding of the availability of dolphins for detection requires knowledge of the detection radius around the monitoring device, when dolphins are present/absent within that range, and the total proportion of time that individuals/groups are vocally active versus silent. Availability may be expected to differ for clicks versus whistles, and therefore requires simultaneous deployment of an F-POD and ST, and separate analysis of each.</p> <p>Potential field methods for investigating availability rely on closely-correlating the locations of dolphin groups relative to the deployment location. This could be potentially achieved in two ways:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Train a shore-based visual observation team to collect data on dolphin movements relative to a nearshore static acoustic device. A simple presence-absence approach could be carried out in conjunction with the method proposed for Priority Data Gap 1, or a more precise approach to</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

|   |   |
|---|---|
|   | <p>measure the distance of dolphins from an acoustic device could use a purpose-built raised platform and theodolite;</p> <p>2. Anchor a boat close to a static device with a visual observer onboard who would follow standard protocols to track and measure distances to dolphin groups relative to the device.</p> <p>Assessing the availability of <i>S. teuszii</i> for acoustic detection could also potentially be informed by an additional method which we do not specifically recommend as a standalone approach but could be implemented if opportunity arose during other (e.g. health assessment) studies:</p> <p>3. Take the opportunity to deploy suction cup acoustic tags on <i>S. teuszii</i> during any proposed live captures in order to assess vocalization rate and potentially distance range.</p>   |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , it's habitats and range state logistics: | <p><b>1. Shore-based theodolite tracking:</b></p> <p>This approach has been used for many other cetacean species and should be applicable to <i>S. teuszii</i> at suitable sites where dolphin presence is daily and sufficiently close to shore. Requires training of personnel and development of standardized protocols in order to produce a robust dataset. May be challenging where dolphin groups are dispersed and uncoordinated, e.g. in sites used for foraging.</p> <p><b>2. Tracking from anchored boat:</b></p> <p>Less optimal than Option 1, since it would be more costly (involving boat charters), offers less eye height to observers, since <i>S. teuszii</i> may avoid boats, and because there is potential for increased noise from sloshing and the boat anchor.</p> <p><b>3. Tagging:</b></p> <p>Live captures for various research goals may be recommended by other WGs (see the outputs of those WGs for considerations regarding welfare, permitting etc.). If approved, these could potentially provide an opportunity to attach minimally-invasive suction cup acoustic tags to individuals in order to generate short (probably up to ~20 hr) but valuable datasets on the acoustic behaviour of the species. Logistical constraints and welfare concerns would be primarily addressed by the live capture operation, but in the case of acoustic tags would also include potential challenges with tag recovery.</p> |
| 3. Focusing on conservation/manage  | <p>(a) The priority recommended short/medium term activity is to carry out shore-based observations of <i>S. teuszii</i> individuals/groups in the vicinity of static devices,</p>  |

| <p>ment relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>   | <p>following standardized protocols, which could be carried out simultaneously with the recommended activity for Priority 1. That activity could be greatly enhanced by theodolite tracking; however, that would require considerably more training and would necessitate in situ input from an international expert at the onset, and so the associated costs would be higher.</p> <p>(b) Over the longer-term, we recommend that any live capture operations developed for <i>S. teuszii</i> (assuming related welfare protocols are evaluated by those associated WGs) should consider the deployment of acoustic tags to provide data on vocalization types and rate of vocalization by individuals and groups of animals. It is unlikely that these tags could be deployed on this species via boat due to their elusive behaviour, so live captures likely present the only viable opportunity.</p>  |                   |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |
|--|--|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------|------------|------|---|--|------|---|--|------|---|--|------|---|--|------|---|--|-----|---|--------------|---------------|--|
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>The costs for implementing shore-based monitoring would be identical to Priority 1. Implementation of a theodolite component would additionally require:</p> <table><tr><th>Item</th><th>Approximate cost (USD)</th><th>Match funding (%)</th></tr><tr><td>Theodolite</td><td>5000</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Construction of raised observation platform (e.g. from eucalyptus telephone poles)</td><td>3000</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>International flight and local transport for field worker for two weeks to train local personnel</td><td>3000</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Accommodation and food for international field worker for two weeks (16 days @ \$130 per day per person)</td><td>2080</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Salary for international field worker for two weeks (@ \$1,200/week)</td><td>2400</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Visa cost for international field worker</td><td>250</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td><b>Total</b></td><td><b>15,730</b></td><td></td></tr></table> | Item              | Approximate cost (USD) | Match funding (%) | Theodolite | 5000 | 0 | Construction of raised observation platform (e.g. from eucalyptus telephone poles) | 3000 | 0 | International flight and local transport for field worker for two weeks to train local personnel | 3000 | 0 | Accommodation and food for international field worker for two weeks (16 days @ \$130 per day per person) | 2080 | 0 | Salary for international field worker for two weeks (@ \$1,200/week) | 2400 | 0 | Visa cost for international field worker | 250 | 0 | <b>Total</b> | <b>15,730</b> |  |
| Item   | Approximate cost (USD)   | Match funding (%) |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |
| Theodolite   | 5000   | 0                 |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |
| Construction of raised observation platform (e.g. from eucalyptus telephone poles)   | 3000   | 0                 |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |
| International flight and local transport for field worker for two weeks to train local personnel   | 3000   | 0                 |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |
| Accommodation and food for international field worker for two weeks (16 days @ \$130 per day per person)   | 2080   | 0                 |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |
| Salary for international field worker for two weeks (@ \$1,200/week)   | 2400   | 0                 |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |
| Visa cost for international field worker   | 250  | 0                 |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |
| <b>Total</b>   | <b>15,730</b>  |                   |                        |                   |            |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |      |   |  |     |   |              |               |  |

## WG8 report APPENDIX 1

### Key conservation-management gaps for *Sousa teuszii* that acoustic monitoring could potentially help to address

Noting that the conservation-management relevance of all of these data gaps is dependent on the ability to reliably distinguish *Sousa teuszii* from other delphinids, which is currently uncertain. Data gaps are color-coded according to their likely applicability to the species as determined by WG8.

| Identified data gap  | Relevance to conservation/management outputs for <i>S. teuszii</i>   |
|--|--|
| Spatio-temporal distribution and identifying persistent hotspots | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Understanding where and when the species occurs, especially given strong variation (e.g. wet and dry seasons) in some countries that may influence seasonal changes in distribution;</li> <li>Understanding which areas are of key importance (i.e. 'hotspots') versus more transitory habitat;</li> <li>Identifying spatio-temporal overlap with potential threats and also identifying appropriate sites for protected area designation;</li> <li>Monitoring occurrence at night (strong advantage over visual methods).</li> </ul>   |
| Density / abundance estimates                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Currently there are no scientifically-robust estimates of abundance available for any <i>S. teuszii</i> range state or 'population,' which is needed to assess global and regional status, and mortality rates;</li> <li>However, it is likely to be challenging to translate acoustic detections of <i>S. teuszii</i> into density or abundance estimates given the larger school sizes (compared with porpoises) and the lack of quantitative data from captive studies or tagged animals to assess variation in vocal behaviour and help to correlate click rate with abundance. Additionally, alternative methods available for <i>S. teuszii</i> (e.g. mark-recapture) may be more optimal.</li> </ul> |
| Population trends  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitoring trends (increasing/stable/decreasing) may be more relevant to conservation management than an absolute estimate of abundance in a given area.</li> <li>Acoustic methods have been developed for this purpose for porpoise species. However, it is unclear whether they would work for <i>S. teuszii</i>, and how trends in detections would relate to trends in population size. More work is needed.</li> </ul>   |
| Initial presence-absence assessments                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Acoustic methods may provide a good option for initial presence-absence assessments of <i>S. teuszii</i> in areas of unsurveyed coast, requiring relatively few resources and helping to target future boat surveys.</li> </ul>   |
| Population structure   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Acoustic data (i.e. call parameters) can potentially support morphological and genetic data in identifying distinct populations / stocks / management units. However, genetic work is the best option.</li> </ul>   |
|  | Feasible   |
|  | Perhaps feasible for <i>S. teuszii</i> , but needing further consideration   |
|  | Not feasible (for now)   |
|  | Feasible, but better methods available   |

## WG8 APPENDIX 2

### Available passive acoustic monitoring techniques for a *Sousa teuszii* long-term monitoring programme

| Technique                 | Deployment                                      | Data type  | Pros and cons   |
|---------------------------|---|--|---|
| Hydrophone array in cable | Towed by boat                                   | Real-time acoustic files, with full bandwidth analysis potential | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Usually simultaneous with visual survey, so good species verification available;</li> <li>• Provides data on all call type parameters (clicks, tonal calls etc);</li> <li>• Covers large spatial areas;</li> <li>• Logistically complicated with multiple components and potentially sophisticated set up;</li> <li>• Boat presence means (1) noise; and (2) potential avoidance by species;</li> <li>• Limited applicability in shallow or complex habitats;</li> <li>• Costly;</li> <li>• Significant analysis time required.</li> </ul>   |
| C-POD                     | Fixed, static                                   | Echolocation click detection                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cost-effective;</li> <li>• Monitor 24/7 throughout deployment;</li> <li>• Requires minimal maintenance or logistics (simple, fast service visits, long battery life of 4+ months);</li> <li>• Suitable for challenging, shallow, complex habitats;</li> <li>• Deployment challenges (with marker buoy=vulnerable to being stolen or lost to fishing/weather; without marker buoy=need diver or remote release or other solution);</li> <li>• Small monitoring radius;</li> <li>• No species verification unless simultaneous visual obs (e.g. from nearby shore);</li> <li>• Rapid analysis and results available via Chelonia software;</li> <li>• Validation of auto-classification results possible?</li> </ul>   |
| F-POD                     | Fixed, static                                   | Echolocation click detection with full waveform capture          |   |
| SoundTrap                 | Static (but also deployable from drifting boat) | Real-time acoustic files, with full bandwidth analysis potential | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provides data on all call type parameters (clicks, tonal calls etc);</li> <li>• Simultaneously records full bandwidth at lower sample rate (e.g., 48 kHz or 96 kHz) while applying a click detector/logger and saving click snippets at higher sample rate (e.g., 288 kHz or 576 kHz);</li> <li>• Longevity is dependent on sampling parameters – HF units can be several months;</li> <li>• Monitor 24/7 throughout deployment;</li> <li>• Small monitoring radius;</li> <li>• No species verification unless close to shore;</li> <li>• Deployment challenges (with marker buoy=vulnerable to being stolen or lost to fishing/weather; without marker buoy=need diver or remote release or other solution);</li> <li>• Suitable for challenging, shallow, complex habitats;</li> </ul> |

|         |   |  |   |
|---------|---|--|---|
|         |   |  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• More costly than F-PODs;</li> <li>• Significant analysis time required for some uses (i.e. whistle analysis, dolphin presence from clicks).</li> </ul>   |
| Gliders | Autonomous. Some types can be programmed to travel specific routes, while others move with currents | Real-time acoustic files, with full bandwidth analysis potential | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operate irrelevant of weather and are 24/7;</li> <li>• Cover large spatial areas;</li> <li>• Low noise as independent from vessels;</li> <li>• No concurrent visual observations to confirm species;</li> <li>• Limited applicability in shallow or complex habitats;</li> <li>• Logistically complicated (deployment/retrieval requires suitable sized boat);</li> <li>• Significant analysis time required;</li> <li>• Very costly.</li> </ul> |

## A11. Working Group 9 Full Report: Bycatch Monitoring and Mitigation in the Republic of Congo

| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Background</b></p> <p>What is already known/available <u>for your WG Target</u> with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?</p>   |
|--|
| <p><b>Working Group Target:</b> Working Group 9 was tasked with assessing the following target identified by Weir et al. (2020):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3.1. Conduct bycatch mitigation work in Congo in partnership with the International Whaling Commission's Bycatch Mitigation Initiative</li> </ul> <p><b>Background</b></p> <p>Over the past decade significant effort has been applied to researching the small-scale fishing (SSF) fleet in the Republic of Congo. This has included work to determine the composition and scale of fish catches, work to assess fisheries effort and distribution as well as assessment of socio-economic factors that are associated with fishing and fishing communities. Work has also included assessments of the bycatch of the Atlantic humpback dolphin (AHD, <i>Sousa teuszii</i>) other coastal cetaceans, turtles and sharks, much of it conducted in partnership with fishing communities. This work provides an excellent baseline for future work on mitigating cetacean bycatch in the country.</p> <p><i>Artisanal Small-scale fishing effort in the Republic of Congo</i></p> <p>The Congolese coast (~170km in length) has an active small-scale fishing (SSF) fleet, made up of ~237 motorized vessels ('Popo' boats/pirogues) and 448 motorized/non-motorized smaller, traditional Congolese vessels ('Vili' boats/pirogues), totaling ~685 vessels in 2017 (689 recorded in Metcalfe et al. 2017). Popo boats are typically 9–14 m in length and 1.5–2.5 m in width and are propelled by 25–40 HP outboard engine, with fishing crews of 4–8 fishers, generally operated by Beninese settlers from the Popo tribe. The Vili boats are typically 6–11 m long by 0.7–0.9 m wide with an average crew of three fishermen (Momballa, 2020; Metcalfe et al. 2017). Across both types of vessel, five gear types are used to catch small pelagic fish: gillnet for flat sardinella, gillnet for round sardinella, gillnet for bonga (<i>Ethmalosa fimbriata</i>), beach seine, and the "plateau" net, which catches sardinella juveniles (<i>Sardinella</i> spp.) and anchovy (<i>Engraulidae</i>). Vili boats typically target bonga, sardinella and anchovies, whilst Popo vessels target mainly target Sardinella, and increasingly pelagic and demersal shark species (Momballa, 2020; FAO, 2019). When targeting shark, Popo vessels use both set gillnets (for demersal sharks) and driftnets (for pelagic sharks) with gillnets measuring 100–450 m long by 15–25 m deep and have a mesh size ranging from 100–240 mm when stretched (Girard et al., 2014, Momballa, 2020). Fishers on Vili vessels do not directly target shark species, although incidental captures occur and are either sold or consumed (Momballa, 2020). Girard et al. 2014 provides an in-depth classification of gillnet mesh-sizes and targeted species.</p> |



All waters within 6nm of the coast are reserved exclusively for small-scale fisheries, including within Conkouati-Douli National Park (CDNP - see figure 1 for MPA boundary) (Metcalf et al. 2017, Momballa, 2020). Fishing within Conkouati is generally limited to communities that fall within the CDNP boundaries, unless specific licenses issued by the Ministry of Fisheries grant access; this system is open to considerable abuse. Popo vessels fish in both the coastal zone and in the Exclusive Economic Zone (up to 45nm) and also fish routinely and illegally within CDNP. Illegal fisheries (e.g. trawlers) frequently operate within this coastal SSF fisheries zone, causing conflict with the SSF fleet (competition for space, over-fishing pressure, gear loss) and pushing the SSF fleet to set nets in the same near shore areas as those used by the Atlantic humpback dolphin (Metcalf et al. 2017). Illegal trawlers frequently target inshore waters at night to limit detection, although this pattern varies dependent on the frequency of fisheries patrols.

Fishing is open all year round with a quota system for both artisanal and industrial fishers. Quotas can be extended if fishers meet all the criteria and pay the appropriate tax, and if the total catch stays within the overall precautionary catch level for the year (Momballa, 2020).

Fisheries enforcement within the Congo is poorly implemented (Metcalf et al. 2017). In 2020 the Ministry of Fisheries established a new fisheries monitoring center for fisheries surveillance and enforcement of industrial fisheries (see <https://fisheries.groupcls.com/the-congo-sets-up-a-new-fisheries-monitoring-center/>). The artisanal fishing community limits the number of fishing expeditions by organising themselves into batches of boats allowed to fish during different months of the year. Shark fishing trips by Popo vessels last from 1-7 days.

Metcalf et al. (2017) recorded 28 SSF landing sites, of which 12-13 landing sites are within the boundaries of CDNP (used by ~26 vessels), 11 landing sites outside of the boundaries and outside of the area of Pointe Noire (used by ~126 vessels), and 5 sites within Pointe Noire (used by ~537 vessels) (Metcalf et al. 2017). More recently, (e.g. from 2018) the 'CAPAP' (Pointe-Noire Artisanal Fishery Support Centre, a joint Japan-Congolese bilateral development co-operation) has offered a platform with fish landing and handling facilities open to all artisanal fishermen, fishmongers, and processors in Pointe-Noire, which has concentrated Pointe-Noire landings at Songolo (Momballa, 2020).

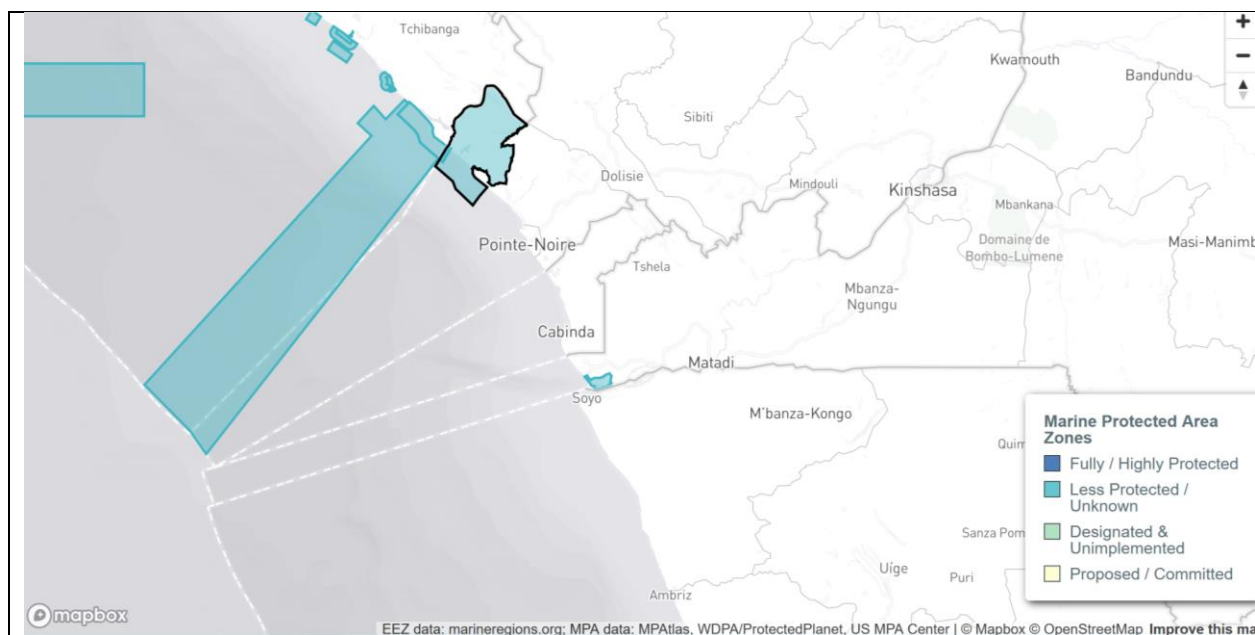


Figure 1. Map derived from Marine Protection Atlas (mpatlas.org) showing Conkouati-Douli National Park (CDNP – blue with black outline), and the Exclusive Economic Zone of the Republic of the Congo, and other marine protected areas in neighbouring Gabon.

#### *Atlantic humpback dolphin bycatch in Conkouati Douli National Park*

Extensive work has been undertaken through a project led by the Wildlife Conservation Society (WCS) to assess bycatch (and species distribution and abundance) in the coastal waters of Congo, with most effort occurring within CDNP although work did include a pair of landing sites outside of the park, between the boundary and Pointe Noire where Atlantic humpback dolphins were occasionally reported (see Figure 1) (Collins et al, 2013). This work was undertaken between 2011 and 2016, after which point it stopped due to a local insurrection. The work included quantitative fisher surveys to describe effort and bycatch (see Metcalfe et al. 2017), the creation of a committee that represented the interests of CDNP fishing communities, (fishermen, village elders and traders) in partnership with the local NGO COGEREN (Comité de Gestion des Ressources Naturelles de Conkouati) and the establishment of a system of ‘pickets’ – comprising a network of fishermen drawn from each landing site - who worked to record sightings and to report bycatch. The WCS-led project also funded boat-based patrols to intercept trawlers and other illegal vessels within the national park in partnership with CNDP rangers, and did reduce the incidence of illegal trawler activity. However maintaining a routine system of patrols proved complicated (operational logistics were a significant issue), limiting operations to less than a dozen patrols per year. Moreover even once illegal vessels had been intercepted, a lack of follow through by officials (and complicity) meant that trawler companies rarely faced significant censure for their infractions.

CDNP appears to represent the species core range within Congo, and within CDNP the section of coast between the embouchure of the Conkouati Lagoon and the Gabonese border appears to represent the area of greatest occurrence, although the bulk of reported bycatches occurred in the Baie de Kounda, involving the landing sites of

Noumbi, Kondi, Bondi and Longobondi, indicating routine passage by the animals in this area. Dolphins have been reported from outside of the park, and although these records are few, their rarity likely reflects a lack of effort and/or reporting from these areas. Sightings in 2019 included the passage of at least two Atlantic humpback dolphins near the beach at Songolo, the site of the new CAPAP facility. The links between CDNP and Mayumba National Park (MNP) in Gabon are also significant (boundaries indicated in Figure 1 as the adjoining marine protected area to CDNP). MNP is much larger, and was initially established to protect the worlds most significant nesting beaches for leatherback turtles. The park was expanded in [2014](#) to include the approaches to the beach that extends to the EEZ limits following a years-long marine spatial planning effort led by WCS. MNP is also an area of significant importance for Atlantic humpback dolphins, and routine movements of dolphins across the border has been recorded by teams from each park. Bycatches of Atlantic humpback dolphins in Mayumba are likely to be very rare, given an almost complete absence of fisheries effort within the park, and so efforts to control bycatches within CDNP are likely to be beneficial across a much wider area.

Inshore bottom set nets were found to cause all known bycatch (3-6 animals per year, typically involving Atlantic humpback dolphins and bottlenose dolphins) in CDNP. An agreement was reached with the CDNP fishing community in May 2015 to trial different gears at a limited number of sites within CDNP. Funding was secured from the US MMC for this purpose, but due to the local political situation in 2015-2016 and then the departure of WCS in 2017, the work was never initiated. The conservation of the local Atlantic humpback dolphins population in CDNP will require a renewed engagement with the local fishing community, and a revised evaluation of the most suitable bycatch reduction programme in partnership between local stakeholders and international experts.

#### *Socio-economic information on artisanal fisheries*

The Congolese SSF sector employs 2,600 fishers, which supports ~35,300 dependents and 26,900 workers not directly engaged in fishing (e.g. processing and marketing), supporting around 9% of the coastal population (Metcalf et al. 2017; Belhabib et al. 2015). Momballa (2020) reported on some socio-economic aspects of the Congolese artisanal fishing fleet, particularly in relation to the shark fishery. Fishers are exclusively men, however both men and women are boat owners (fishing patrons/sponsors). Processing is mostly done by women, often related to the fishers and employed by the wholesale fishmongers. The joint Japan-Congolese project PECHVAL (Fisheries Value Chain Improvement Study Project) was carried out and completed in 2015, and looked to improve the value chain for artisanal fisheries (improving quality, preserving the product, transport, sale, and consumption).

#### *Management of Conkouati Douli National Park*

As with all other parks in Congo, the CDNP has always been cooperatively managed. The initial partnership was with IUCN who established the management framework and negotiated the terms of cooperation with local communities (that the park absorbed) and in 2000 management was passed to WCS. Following the departure of WCS from CDNP in 2017, co-management will fall to Noe Conservation which has experience in the long-term management and rehabilitation of protected areas. The terms of this partnership remain to be settled, with delays caused by the COVID 19 pandemic. One this goes ahead there will be opportunities to develop collaborative projects within the park boundaries relating to bycatch management and fisheries enforcement. WCS remains an active partner in national park management elsewhere in Congo (and in neighbouring Gabon) and maintains a small marine programme based in Pointe Noire. WCS also works cooperatively with the local NGO Renatura that

focuses principally on the conservation of marine turtles and marine education, and this work recently included working in partnership with WCS to oversee the monitoring of the annual sea turtle nesting season in CDNP.

#### *International Whaling Commission (IWC) – Bycatch Mitigation Initiative (BMI)*

The IWC's Bycatch Mitigation Initiative is focused on raising awareness of the issue of cetacean bycatch and the available approaches and solutions to assessing, monitoring, and reducing bycatch. The initiative's focus is currently on bycatch in gillnets, particularly in SSF. The BMI is planning to work on a series of collaborative, locally-led pilot projects, where different assessment, monitoring and mitigation approaches can be implemented. These projects bring together national governments, conservation groups, researchers, fishing communities to work towards effective and viable solutions. Effective approaches will then be scaled-up (e.g. sub/national scale) or exported to other fisheries where appropriate. The Republic of Congo has been identified as a priority location for the development of a pilot project, given the conservation need, the relatively small coastal area, and the existing work that has already been carried out.

#### **References:**

Belhabib, D., Mendy, A., Subah Y, T. Broh, Nasi., Jueseah, A.S., Nipey, N., Boeh, W.W., Willemse, N., Zeller, D., Pauly, D. (2016) Fisheries catch under-reporting in The Gambia, Liberia and Namibia and the three large marine ecosystems which they represent, Environmental Development, Volume 17, Supplement 1, 2016, Pages 157-174.

Collins, T., Strindberg, S., Mboumba, R., Dilambaka, E., Thonio, J., Mouissou, C., Boukaka, R., Saffou, G.K., Buckland, L., Leeney, R., Antunes, R., Rosenbaum, H.C. (2013). Progress on Atlantic humpback dolphin conservation and research efforts in Congo and Gabon. Paper submitted to IWC Scientific Committee 2013. SC/65a/SM16 Rev

FAO. (2019). *Report of the FAO/CECAF Working Group on the Assessment of Small Pelagic Fish – Subgroup South. Elmina, Ghana, 12-20 September 2018. Rapport du Groupe de travail FAO/COPACE sur l'évaluation des petits poissons pélagiques – Sous-groupe Sud. Elmina, Ghana, Rome: CECAF/ECAF Series / COPACE/PACE Séries No. 19/81. Retrieved from [www.fao.org/publications](http://www.fao.org/publications)*

Girard, Alexandre & Louvinguila, Helene & Breheret, Nathalie & Monsinjon, Jonathan & Charra, Margaux & Protat, Elodie & Roche, Helene & Ngokaka, Christophe & Girondot, Marc. (2014). *Fishing gears and techniques used in the Bay of Loango, Republic of Congo, and their by-catch risks. Cybium. 38. 117-131.*

Hines, E., L. S. Ponnampalam, C. Junchompoo, C. Peter, L. Vu, T. Huynh, M. Caillat, A. F. Johnson, G. Minton, R. L. Lewison, and G. M. Verutes. 2020. Getting to the bottom of bycatch: a GIS-based toolbox to assess the risk of marine mammal bycatch. *Endangered Species Research* **42**:37-57.

Momballa, M. C. (2020). *Rapid Assessment of the Artisanal Shark Trade in the Republic of the Congo*. Yaounde, Cameroon and Cambridge, UK.

Metcalfe, K., Collins, T., Abernethy, K.E., Boumba, R., Dengui, J.-C., Miyalou, R., Parnell, R.J., Plummer, K.E., Russell, D.J., Safou, G.K., Tilley, D., Turner, R.A., VanLeeuwe, H., Witt, M.J. and Godley, B.J. (2017), Addressing Uncertainty in Marine Resource Management; Combining Community Engagement and Tracking Technology to Characterize Human Behavior. CONSERVATION LETTERS, 10: 460-469. <https://doi.org/10.1111/conl.12293>

Turvey, S. T., C. T. Trung, V. D. Quyet, H. V. Nhu, D. V. Thoai, V. C. A. Tuan, D. T. Hoa, K. Kacha, T. Sysomphone, S. Wallate, C. T. T. Hai, N. V. Thanh, and N. M. Wilkinson. 2015. Interview-based sighting histories can inform regional conservation prioritization for highly threatened cryptic species. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 52:422-433

Weir, C., Leeney, R. and Collins, T. (2020). Reinvigorating conservation efforts for the Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*): A brief progress report. Paper SC/68B/SM07 presented to the International Whaling Commission, Cambridge, UK.

| Data/resource Gaps and how to address them: |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| Project steps                               | Identified data/resource gap   | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i>   |
| <b>1</b>                                    | <p>Stakeholder and decision maker engagement. Mapping and coordination with other relevant initiatives.</p> <p>This includes: re-engagement of local fishing community, NGOs, park and fisheries managers and national policy makers to address cetacean bycatch</p> <p>And Coordination with other initiatives and programmes operating in Congo.</p> | <p>The project will not be possible without the buy-in of both decision makers and the fishing community and local conservation organisations. Good relationships with fishers and Government were built during previous work, but there is a need to re-engage with the fishing community in relation to cetacean bycatch, and to raise awareness with current government officials etc. of the need for this work now and how the CCAHD, local organisations and others and the IWC BMI can assist.</p> <p>There is also a vital need to map out existing projects, programmes and initiatives (international, regional, national gov, IGO and NGO led) in the country in relation to SSF and bycatch (incl. sharks, turtles etc) and discuss potential collaboration with these groups, including possible synergies with BMI pilot projects, or opportunities to use information collected for pilot project implementation, or to ensure that work is not counter-productive. This will ensure that the bycatch project does not repeat work unnecessarily, or lead to local stakeholder saturation on fisheries work.</p> |
| <b>2</b>                                    | <p>Updated understanding of bycatch risk (fishing effort/ <i>Sousa</i> distribution/interaction with fishing gear) within and outside CDNP and collection of socio-economic information from fishers and supply chain to inform bycatch reduction approaches.</p>  | <p>Existing information published in 2017 is available characterizing the SSF fleet and mapping effort (Metcalf et al. 2017), and information is available on bycatch occurring within the boundaries of the CDNP (Collins et al. 2016). All the information used by these publications is now a few years out of date, so it will be necessary to check whether there have been any changes to the fishing fleet, effort, or bycatch rates (or species distribution/abundance). It would also be</p>   |

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
|  |   | important to collect data from fishers operating outside of the CDPN boundaries. This data can be collected using interviews to assess local ecological knowledge (LEK) (e.g. Turvey et al.2015). Socio-economic data will need to be collected (or collated if previously collected) and analyzed in relation to SSF fishers and the supply chain in order to identify the most effective bycatch reduction strategies to trial (e.g. could alternative gears or livelihoods be possible; could a premium be paid for fish that is not associated with bycatch etc). |
| <b>3</b>                                     | Define mitigation/management solutions and develop draft national bycatch strategy  | This collaborative step is essential for developing a single or series of mitigation approaches in collaboration with (and so hopefully the buy-in of) stakeholders and decision makers.  |
| <b>4a</b><br><br><b>and</b><br><br><b>4b</b> | Implement BMI pilot project using the identified strategies & evaluate effectiveness  | This is a critical part of the work to evaluate whether the proposed bycatch management programme will effectively reduce bycatch and allow the artisanal SSF fleet to continue to make their livelihood. Ideally the pilot project will involve fishers both within and outside the CDPN.  |
|  | Capacity building in relation to bycatch assessment, monitoring, mitigation, enforcement  | Vital step to ensure that capacity is developed in government departments, agencies and other relevant organisations involved in fisheries management, and that this capacity is sustained beyond the life of the pilot project.  |
| <b>5</b>                                     | Scale up from pilot project to national implementation of successful bycatch reduction strategy and long-term monitoring programme. | This is vital in order to successfully address the threat of bycatch to Atlantic humpback dolphins in the Congo, but is likely to be beyond the immediate scope of this work and will require longer term implementation.   |

**Data/resource gap - Step 1 Stakeholder and decision maker engagement. Mapping and coordination with other relevant initiatives.**



|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>  | <p>1. Engagement via letters/meetings/workshops with national government (including IWC Commissioner, CMS representatives, fisheries departments etc.) in relation to collaborative IWC/CCAHD project.</p> <p>2. Hire local coordinator(s).</p> <p>3. Map out existing initiatives underway or planned in Congo relevant to SSF and bycatch work and discuss synergies and collaboration (including World Bank, FAO, CECAF, UNEP, other UN/development aid programmes, environmental projects run by national gov and NGOs.</p> <p>4. Local coordinators engage with fishing community (fishers and supply chain representatives) to be part of local monitoring and mitigation scheme.</p> <p>5. Hold meetings with communities and all stakeholders.</p> |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, it's habitats and range state logistics:</p>  | <p>1. Engagement is highly achievable, but requires willingness and capacity on national government's behalf.</p> <p>2. Highly achievable. Possible candidates those who were involved in previous work.</p> <p>3. Achievable but time consuming and requiring intensive scoping work and collaboration from decision makers, researchers, NGOs etc.</p> <p>4. Assumed to be achievable given that this work has been done before with a similar model. Possible challenges exist if fishers already engaged in other research or no longer keen to collaborate.</p> <p>5) Achievable, possibly challenging to get international participants to in-person meetings during 2021 due to pandemic and this may also apply to local participants.</p>         |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p> | <p><b>All steps needed in short/medium term and all high priority for establishing project.</b></p> <p>Work to re-engage the fishing communities in the project</p> <p>Identify local researchers/project representatives to lead the work and engagement on the ground. Former WCS project staff would be ideal for this role.</p> <p>Work to promote engagement in the project by local NGOs, recognizing that there will be some lags associated with capacity building, but will be necessary for longer term success.</p>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> <p>(ii) Please provide a list of <b>key</b> resources/equipment that would need to be considered to accomplish the action. That may variously include boat charter, international travel/visas, accommodation, meeting room hire, equipment, laboratory time, analysis time. <b>ALL</b> actions should include contingency for local participation:</p> | <p><b>Budget</b></p> <p>Budget is expected to be medium (20-30k) to set this activity up in the short term.</p> <p><b>Key resources</b></p> <p>Salary costs for local coordinators</p> <p>Per Diems for meeting participants, as well as local transport costs</p> <p>Meeting room hire (NB. potential no-cost options are available)</p> <p>Travel for local and international experts (flights, visas, accommodation)</p> <p>Time for scoping of relevant projects and outreach (salary)</p> <p><b>Possible co-funding</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Noe may have funding and staff to support the marine and coastal component of their park management.</li> <li>- IWC BMI seed funding</li> <li>- WCS/US MMC funds</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

| <b>Data/resource gap - Step 2; Updated understanding of bycatch risk (fishing effort/ Sousa distribution/interaction with fishing gear) within and outside CNDP and collection of socio-economic information from fishers and supply chain to inform bycatch reduction approaches.</b> |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>  | <p>1. Collation of existing spatial data (fishing effort, bycatch, Sousa distribution) within and beyond CNDP boundaries, including a search for updated information. Collation of existing socio-economic information on artisanal fisheries (net income, expenses, catch, fishing trip information).</p> <p>2. Collection of any necessary additional data on Sousa (updated distribution/abundance info) artisanal fishery information, socio-economics, bycatch rates (questionnaires to assess local fisher knowledge (LEK – e.g. Turvey et al. 2015)/community participatory approaches, cetacean survey information, self-reporting of bycatch). Mapping of local and export supply chain of fish products.</p> |

|   |   |
|---|---|
|   | 3. Updated rapid assessment to characterize bycatch risk (e.g. using Hines et al 2020) across the whole Congolese coast.  |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , it's habitats and range state logistics:                                       | <p>1. Collation of existing spatial, biological and fishery data (e.g. Metcalfe et al. 2017, Momballa, 2020, Collins et al. 2013)</p> <p>Highly feasible to achieve, constrained by what data has been collected and its availability/suitability for risk assessment.</p> <p>2. Collection of additional data on fishery, Sousa, socio-economics, community perceptions to bycatch and mitigation, mapping of fishery supply chain across local and international markets.</p> <p>Feasible to achieve over the short-medium term (Covid-19 situation dependent). Will rely on local teams carrying out work. This may also be combined with the Local Ecological Knowledge interviews being assessed and recommended by CCAHD Working Group 6.</p> <p>3. Rapid bycatch risk assessment (using Hines et al. 2020 methodology, or other relevant approach)</p> <p>Achievable, provided steps 1 and 2 are able to happen.</p> |
| 3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:<br><br>(a) the short/medium-term (<2 years)<br><br>(b) the longer-term (>2 years) | <p>The listed activities/approaches are steps towards conducting a risk assessment, therefore all are necessary and probably achievable in the short term &lt;2 years. Actually carrying out the risk assessment, whether using just existing data, or incorporating new data, is the priority activity in both the short and long term. The risk assessment could be repeated in the medium-long term to help with monitoring bycatch and the mitigation measures.</p>   |
| With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:<br><br>(i) likely budget requirement<br><br>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;  | <p><b>Budget</b></p> <p>Risk assessment and data collation/collection: &lt;20-30k USD</p> <p><b>Key resources</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Existing data on Sousa, fisheries</li> <li>Staff time for experts in bycatch risk assessment to carry out analysis of existing data and again for any new updated information.</li> </ul>  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• International travel and accommodation for experts (Covid dependent)</li> <li>• IT and GIS tools,</li> </ul> <p><i>For additional data collection:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Field equipment (drones, binoculars, digital cameras, GPS)</li> <li>• [Possibly] small boat charter</li> <li>• Payment for fishers involved in data collection</li> <li>• Local workshop [meeting room hire]</li> <li>• Local staff to coordinate and collect new data on fisheries, Sousa, socio-economics.</li> <li>• Local travel budget</li> </ul> <p><b>Possible co-funding</b></p> <p>IWC Bycatch Mitigation Initiative co-funding for risk assessment work [amount to be confirmed], and pilot project seed funding [to be determined]</p> |
|--|--|

| Data/resource gap - Step 3 Define mitigation/management solutions and develop draft national bycatch strategy                              |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>                                | <p>1. Using information collected/collated under Priority Rank 2, conduct a series of virtual (or if possible, in-person) workshops (local coordinators, managers, fishers, experts and IWC Expert Panel members &amp; other bycatch and social and community engagement experts) to discuss risk assessment, and possible mitigation and management solutions (including technical mitigation, spatial measures, alternative gears, market approaches) (meetings in French/with translation).</p> <p>2. Identify if any market-based methods available in local fishery supply chain to fund up-take and use of technical mitigation/alternative gears.</p> <p>3. Final evaluation and selection of options (technical mitigation, alternative gears, alternative livelihoods) and design of mitigation/management (gear switching/closed areas/alternative livelihood) trials.</p> <p>4. Produce a draft national bycatch strategy</p> |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with</p> | <p>1. Achievable if existing information can be collated to inform the possible mitigation/management approaches. Will depend on local engagement and input.</p>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , it's habitats and range state logistics:  | <p>2. Achievable with the right partners, but may not indicate any methods to incentivize change for bycatch reduction.</p> <p>3. Achievable, but success will depend on local fishers willingness to test different approaches (and willingness of decision makers to facilitate process).</p> <p>4. Achievable to draft, but will require buy-in and willingness to implement from decision makers.</p> |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>   | <p>a) Evaluation of most appropriate management approach to trials and implementation of mitigation/management trials</p> <p>b) Evaluate success of mitigation/management trials and make recommendations for management.</p> <p>c) evaluate or predict Gov and community's involvement</p>   |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p><b>Budget</b></p> <p>Small</p> <p><b>Key resources</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• International travel/visas/accommodation</li> <li>• Meeting room hire</li> <li>• Local travel costs</li> </ul> <p><b>Possible co-funding</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IWC BMI seed funding</li> <li>• WCS – Marine Mammal Commission funding</li> </ul>                        |

#### Data/resource gap - Step 4

Implement BMI pilot project using the identified strategies & evaluate effectiveness

Capacity building in relation to bycatch assessment, monitoring, mitigation, enforcement

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:  | <p>1. Implement bycatch mitigation trials or management approach identified under Step 3 in collaboration with fishing community, park managers and government agencies.</p> <p>2. Evaluate success (BMI Expert Panel, CCAHD, IWC SC), economic and logistical feasibility of mitigation/management trials and make recommendations (IWC SC, CC) to managers/fishing communities.</p> <p>3. Develop capacity of government agencies, in collaboration with park managers, fisheries enforcement external organisations in relation to monitoring, mitigation and enforcement of cetacean bycatch .This is either through workshops, apprenticeship programmes or other appropriate methods to be determined with stakeholders.</p> |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , it's habitats and range state logistics:                                       | These activities are likely to be feasible to achieve over the medium term, but will require the existing steps to be successfully achieved, including government and fisher community engagement and buy-in to the work.  |
| 3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:<br><br>(a) the short/medium-term (<2 years)<br><br>(b) the longer-term (>2 years) | <p>a) implementation of pilot project and capacity building</p> <p>b) ongoing monitoring and management</p>  |
| With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:<br><br>(i) likely budget requirement<br><br>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;  | <p><b>Budget</b></p> <p>Large</p> <p><b>Key resources</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fisher compensation/payment for participation</li> <li>• Fuel/boat hire</li> <li>• Mitigation gear (if applicable)</li> <li>• Alternative gear (if appropriate)</li> <li>• Vessel monitoring (logbook/electronic/observers/GPS)</li> <li>• At sea safety gear/insurance etc.</li> </ul>   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IT (laptops etc)</li> <li>• Binoculars/field equipment.</li> <li>• Monitoring equipment (electronic/log books/GPS)</li> <li>• Observers (if appropriate)</li> <li>• Fisher compensation/participation as observers</li> <li>• Analysis time/costs</li> </ul> <p><b>Possible co-funding</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IWC BMI Pilot project seed funding</li> <li>• WCS Funding</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

| <b>Data/resource gap - Step 5 Scale up from pilot project to national implementation of successful bycatch reduction strategy and long-term monitoring and enforcement programme.</b>                               |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Hold workshop/meetings on sustainable financing opportunities with international experts, fishing community and government officials in relation to effective management solution(s).</li> <li>2. Government adoption of bycatch strategy</li> <li>3. Funds secured for implementation of mitigation/management approach at national scale</li> <li>4. All of SSF fleet adopts mitigation/management</li> <li>5. Long-term monitoring and enforcement programmes implemented</li> </ol> |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, it's habitats and range state logistics:</p> | <p>All of these activities require government leadership, and sustainable funding to support their implementation. These are major constraints to this being successful long term.</p>  |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p>  | <p>All activities are a priority, but will only be implementable over the longer-term.</p>  |



|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>  |   |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p><b>Budget</b></p> <p>Large (and probably beyond the scope of a project)</p> <p><b>Key resources</b></p> <p><b>Possible co-funding</b></p> <p>Unknown- potentially market-based sources</p> |

## A12. Working Group 10 Full Report: Mitigating Impacts of Coastal Developments

| <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Data gaps and conservation management needs</b></p> <p><b>Background.</b> What is already known/available <u>for your WG Target</u> with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (if possible, please include an appropriate reference list)?</p>   |
|--|
| <p><b>Working Group Target:</b> Working Group 10 addressed the following target from Weir et al. 2020:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Target 3.3. Address threat level from commercial coastal development (short to medium term)</i></li> </ul> <p><b>Background</b></p> <p><b>Threat from coastal development</b> –The threat of coastal development in Atlantic humpback dolphin (<i>Sousa teuszii</i>, hereafter referred to as AHD) habitat is likely to be highly significant, although is currently poorly documented throughout the species’ range. Expanding coastal settlements, port developments (often involving land reclamation, dredging and dumping of sand and other sediments), gold and other mineral mining, and oil and gas exploration and extraction, are occurring in various parts of the species’ range, and have been recognized as potential threats of significance, throughout the species’ range. In general, the severity of the threat from coastal development and its cumulative impacts has been under-appreciated and under-quantified (Weir et al. 2011). Data are lacking, both regarding the number of such developments occurring in range states each year, the mitigation being implemented (if any), and the resulting impacts on dolphins. However, it may be reasonably assumed that the latter are similar to those documented for other small cetaceans occupying nearshore habitats globally.</p> <p>Coastal development has the potential to cause behavioural disturbance, disruption of movements, and shifts of dolphin distribution into sub-optimal habitat areas (Collins 2015). Such “short-term” and often localized effects, can in turn sometimes lead to long-term population fragmentation and other consequences, especially for a species such as the AHD, with a distribution limited by suitable habitat, potentially low population size, and other sources of mortality (e.g. bycatch). The continued urban expansion that often follows port development can make these issues even more serious. Environmental impact assessments (EIAs) are woefully inadequate in most African countries and rarely consider the cumulative and synergistic effects of multiple developments within the broader range.</p> <p><b>References</b></p> <p>Collins, T. 2015. Re-Assessment of the Conservation Status of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin, <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (Kükenthal, 1892) Using the IUCN Red List Criteria. Pages 47-78 in T. A. Jefferson and B. E. Curry eds.</p> |

Humpback Dolphins (*Sousa* spp.): Current Status and Conservation, Part 1: Advances in Marine Biology. Elsevier.

Weir, C. R., K. Van Waerebeek, T. A. Jefferson and T. Collins. 2011. West Africa's Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*): Endemic, enigmatic, and soon Endangered? African Zoology 46:1-17.

Weir, C., Leeney, R. and Collins, T. (2020). Reinvigorating conservation efforts for the Atlantic humpback dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*): A brief progress report. Paper SC/68B/SM07 presented to the International Whaling Commission, Cambridge, UK.

Weir, C. R. and T. Collins. 2015. A Review of the Geographical Distribution and Habitat of the Atlantic Humpback Dolphin (*Sousa teuszii*). Pages 79-118 in T. A. Jefferson and B. E. Curry eds. Humpback Dolphins (*Sousa* spp.): Current Status and Conservation, Part 1: Advances in Marine Biology. Elsevier.

### Identifying priority conservation management data gaps

Please list and rank these in the Table according to their perceived importance for achieving conservation and management outcomes.

**Data/resource Gaps and how to address them:** Please list and rank these according to perceived importance for achieving conservation/management outcomes, and then please complete the table below for each identified gap.

| Priority rank | Identified data/resource gap  | Relevance to achieving conservation/management outputs for <i>Sousa teuszii</i>   |
|---------------|---|---|
| 1             | Lack of information on developments occurring in marine coastal habitats and potentially overlapping with the species (the latter requiring improved knowledge of species distribution – see WG3 – but acknowledging that a default ‘precautionary principle’ should be to expect the species to occur) | Understanding the scale of coastal development is critical to managing potential impacts on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> . Currently, it is problematic to assess this threat due to lack of transparent data on when and where coastal development is occurring. |
| 2             | Lack of adequate baseline surveys for AHD in proposed development areas, with subsequent lack of informed decision-making in EIAs.  | Given the lack of information on the occurrence of AHDs throughout their range, baseline surveys are important to establish the level of use of proposed development sites, identify threats, and inform the use of appropriate mitigation measures       |
| 3             | Lack of information and awareness of the potential impacts of coastal development on AHD, and inadequate consideration of AHD in EIAs .   | Knowledge of the type and scale of threats is integral to implementing effective mitigation and management of <i>Sousa teuszii</i> in all range states.   |

|          |   |  |
|----------|---|--|
| <b>4</b> | Potential lack of awareness of mitigation protocols and biodiversity offsets that can be implemented during and after development | It is unclear whether coastal developments in <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range states are including contingency for the mitigation of threats and conservation management of this critically endangered species. Wide-scale and unchecked development in coastal habitats could potentially have significant impacts on localized populations. |
|----------|---|--|

| <b>Priority data gap 1: Acquiring information on coastal developments</b>  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:   | 1. Engage with World Bank and other lenders, governments, in-country consultant agencies and NGOs, and the commercial companies carrying out the projects, to generate an inventory of current and planned coastal development projects and their potential impact on the species. This should include explicit consideration of the progressive loss of AHD habitats to coastal development, the role that lenders play in this loss, and the inadequacy of current EIA standards.  |
| 2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i> , its habitats and range state logistics: | This should be feasible. A first phase of the inventory could involve a questionnaire the CCAHD network of range-state partners and use of IUCN, CMS and IWC contacts to identify appropriate government contacts. A funded consultancy might yield a higher quality inventory more quickly. Ideally data on current and planned developments would be stored in a central online database accessible by CCAHD members. Supporting documents for different developments (development plans, EIAs etc, could be stored in a shared online drive). |
| 3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:  | Generate an inventory of current and planned coastal development projects throughout <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range, and their potential impact on the species. This should include all large-scale coastal developments, such as ports, oil & gas operations, infrastructure development (including coastal roads and bridges), fish processing plants, etc.  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p>  |  |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p> <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>This would likely require a small to moderate budget of 20,000 USD or more – ideally involving a consultancy and/or compensation for the time that range -state partners would invest in data gathering and contribution to the central database.</p> |

| <b>Priority data gap 2: Lack of adequate baseline surveys and subsequent assessment in EIAs ahead of coastal construction projects</b> |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>                            | <p>1. Produce a CCAHD protocol document that outlines minimum recommended approaches for the baseline surveys associated with construction project EIAs. Distribute to key stakeholders and raise awareness.</p> <p>2. Conduct (regional) hand-on training workshops to increase the capacity of local scientists to carry out baseline surveys.</p> <p>3. Collect and analyze data to obtain ‘baseline’ density estimates and habitat use parameters for known population ranges (e.g., distribution and photo-identification surveys, as being evaluated by Working Group 3). Where it is not possible to calculate absolute abundance/density, relative abundance/density measures can still be used to identify important habitat. Surveys should also include collection of at least basic environmental /habitat data, such as depth, salinity, turbidity, etc.</p> |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, it's habitats and range state logistics:</p>  | <p>1. Achievable, but written manuals, even if illustrated may not be sufficient to truly empower local scientists/EIA agencies to collect data to the appropriate standard, and may perpetuate the need for external experts to conduct surveys. Manuals should be supported by hands-on training for local scientists.</p> <p>2. Regional hands-on training workshops are also recommended by WG2, with a recommendation that they be conducted in Senegal, where local partners and logistics are in place to conduct hands-on work in a known <i>Sousa teuszii</i> hotspot. The recommended activity is highly feasible, and constrained only by budget and availability of experienced personnel to conduct the training.</p> <p>3. Achievable, in many cases, but there are often challenges in terms of funding, availability of trained local personnel, vessel and equipment availability, etc. In some cases, it may be advantageous to collaborate with national parks and/or fisheries agencies that are involved in regular coastal/marine patrols. Use of <a href="#">SMART</a>, or simplified line-transect methodology may provide insight into relative abundance where funding and expertise for dedicated cetacean surveys is not available.</p> |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p> | <p>Regional hands-on training workshops for local scientists to be supported by clear manuals or protocols for approaches to baseline surveys, so that government and industry stakeholders are aware of the minimum standard of data required to adequately assess the potential impact of a development on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> (and/or other cetacean species).</p> <p>Baseline surveys themselves are also recommended - but are dealt with more thoroughly in the template for WG3.</p>  |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p>   | <p>See WG2 for budget estimates for hands-on training workshops.</p> <p>Development of a CCAHD protocol document that outlines minimum recommended approaches for the baseline surveys associated with construction project EIAs. This is likely to require a small budget (&lt;20,000 USD).</p>  |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>African Aquatic Conservation Fund in Senegal and AMMCO in Cameroon can assist with logistics for surveys and training workshops, and provide local personnel to be trained in survey techniques. There is potential for NGOs in other range states to also help in this way.</p> |
|---|---|

| <b>Priority data gap 3: Lack of information and awareness of the potential impacts of coastal development on AHD, and inadequate consideration of AHD in EIAs .</b>  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>  | <p>1. Produce a document outlining potential impacts on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> from construction projects that could guide EIA assessments. Distribute to key stakeholders to make these relevant stakeholders aware of the species, its habitats (which are shared with other threatened taxa) and conservation status, the potential impacts of developments, and how to mitigate them.</p> <p>2. Work with local NGOs in all range states to engage local governments and stakeholders to improve environmental assessment and mitigation practices (esp. using recognized experts on the species) so that they consider AHD impacts in coastal development plans/EIAs</p> <p>3. Engage international companies and lenders (e.g., World Bank, IFC, ADB) involved with coastal development projects in the region in dialogues about how their activities may impact AHD and potential options for increasing protection</p> |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, its habitats and range state logistics:</p> | <p>1. This document could be produced with the expertise that exists in the CCAHD group. However, it would take dedicated time and effort, as well as input from with range-state partners to ensure that messaging and recommendations are clear and appropriate for the target groups.</p> <p>This desk-based programme of work could build on the inventory above, to assess the potential impact of each identified project, using studies from similar developments in other parts of the world (e.g. Hong Kong, where multiple line-transect and mark-recapture studies have been conducted on the impact of coastal construction projects on <i>Sousa chinensis</i>).</p>  |

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  | <p>2. This work could be conducted in conjunction with planned government stakeholder outreach as outlined in the WG2 template report. Modest funding is available for this government outreach through an IUCN-EDGE grant.</p> <p>3. This would build on the inventory of large scale coastal developments (see above) and an understanding of the roles that lenders play in bringing these projects to completion. Priority may be given to engagement of industry stakeholders that have international 'green credentials' that they need to protect or promote. For example, in Gabon industry ended up funding some of the critical first surveys that allowed us to identify dolphin hotspots that required protection. In some cases, international corporations may be more familiar than the government agencies they deal with when it comes to what constitutes a good EIA and what their role in generating the needed data for such an EIA can be. Local or international NGOs (or the CCAHD) can be a good way to let them know that someone is watching, and willing to help them do things the 'right way'.</p> |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/management relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p> | <p>Work with local NGOs and CCAHD partners in all range states to engage local governments and stakeholders to improve environmental assessment and mitigation practices (esp. using recognized experts on the species) so that they consider AHD impacts in coastal development plans/EIAs - supported by the drafting of a document outlining impacts of coastal development on <i>Sousa teuszii</i> and other nearshore/coastal species.</p>  |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p>   | <p>This would initially require a relatively small budget, under 20,000 USD. It is primarily human resources and time are required, so funds should be available to support the development of suitable guidance documents, and support local CCAHD partners responsible for engaging government/policy and industry stakeholders.</p>   |



|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(ii) likely core resource/equipment requirements;</p> <p>(iii) potential co-funding and/or donations in kind and/or equipment donations that could support this activity</p> | <p>9,100 USD is available for government outreach and engagement in conservation planning through an IUCN SSC EDGE grant. Further funds are available to support the CMS Concerted Action, which envisages a meeting of key scientists and government stakeholders for <i>Sousa teuszii</i> range states.</p> |
|---|---|

| <b>Priority data gap 4: Potential lack of awareness of mitigation protocols and biodiversity offsets that can be implemented during and after development</b>  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Please list (as numbered points) possible methods/approaches to addressing the data/resource gap:</p>  | <p>1. Produce recommendations for minimum mitigation protocols and suggestions for off-sets that could be adopted for development in areas where AHD are considered likely to occur (based on suitable habitat or the results of baseline surveys). Distribute to key stakeholders and raise awareness. Mitigation options can include improved coastal zone management and the establishment of Marine Protected Areas (MPAs). Very few MPAs have been established in the region (see figure 1), and where they have been established, they are relatively new, and potentially face challenges for adequate management and mitigation of threats. In Gabon, different levels of MPAs and managed use areas dictate what types of human activities and developments are allowed in each area (figure 2). For example seismic surveys are generally not permitted in MPAs, except under certain circumstances, and then under stricter regulations and with more mitigation measures than waters outside of MPAs.</p> |
| <p>2. For each of the methods/approaches listed above, please briefly consider and summarize achievability and likely constraints with regard to <i>Sousa teuszii</i>, its habitats and range state logistics:</p> | <p>This action is highly feasible, but requires the knowledge gained from the recommended inventory above to be thorough and accurate. As a short-term goal, work could commence on a desk-based study to assess best practices from other regions (e.g. Hong Kong; Sakhalin Island, Russia), where government stakeholders and proponents of coastal developments or offshore oil and gas activities have been held to a high standard for mitigation of the impacts of their work and/or offsets such as funding research and conservation activities.</p>  |
| <p>3. Focusing on conservation/manage</p>  | <p>Produce recommendations for minimum mitigation protocols and suggestions for off-sets that could be adopted for construction in areas where AHD are considered</p>   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>ment relevance and practical achievability, what would you recommend as a single priority activity to address this data gap in:</p> <p>(a) the short/medium-term (&lt;2 years)</p> <p>(b) the longer-term (&gt;2 years)</p> | <p>likely to occur. Use these recommendations in engagement of government and industry stakeholders in range states.</p>   |
| <p>With regard to 3a (short/medium action), please provide a broad indication of:</p> <p>(i) likely budget requirement</p>   | <p>This would initially require a relatively small budget, under 20,000 USD. It is primarily human resources and time that are required. Funds would be required to support the development of suitable recommendations though a consultancy if required. Again involvement of range-state partners and stakeholders will be critical to ensuring that recommendations are tailored to local settings and are framed in a way that is most likely to convince relevant stakeholders.</p> |

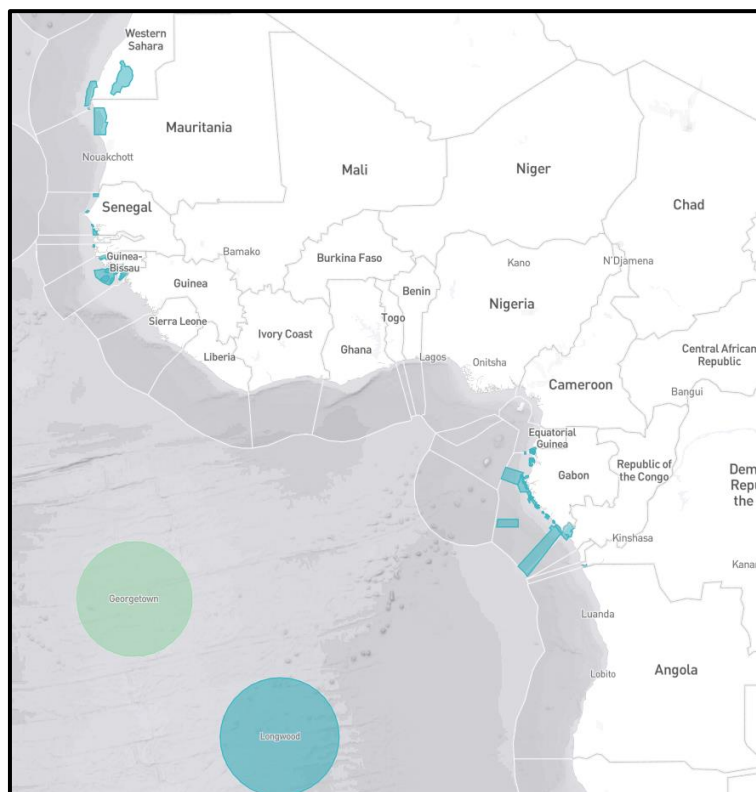


Fig. 1 Overview of Marine Protected Areas in *Sousa teuszii* range states – taken from: The Marine Conservation Institute’s Marine Protection Atlas: <https://mpatlas.org/zones>

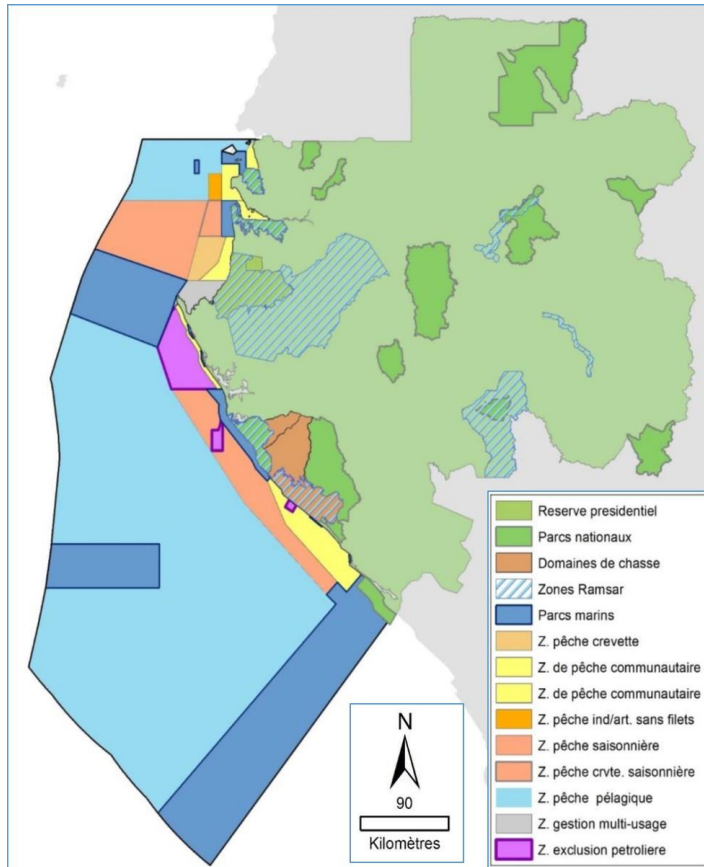


Fig. 2 Map showing existing MPAs in Gabon, and other managed areas that may be useful for AHD conservation